AQUATIC BASELINE AND IMPACT STUDY AS PART OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT AND **AUTHORISATION PROCESS FOR THE DOORNHOEK** FLUORITE MINE, ZEERUST, NORTH-WEST PROVINCE

Prepared for

Exigo Pty Ltd

July 2016

Report authors

Report Reference: Date:

K.J. Bremner S. van Staden (Pr. Sci. Nat) SAS 216066 July 2016

> Scientific Aquatic Services CC CC Reg No 2003/078943/23 Vat Reg. No. 4020235273 PO Box 751779 Gardenview 2047 Tel: 011 616 7893



Fax: 086 724 3132 E-mail: admin@sasenvironmental.co.za

BASELINE REPORT

Declaration of Independence

This report has been prepared according to the requirements of Section 32 (3b) of the Environmental Impact Assessments Regulations, 2014 (GNR 982). We (the undersigned) declare the findings of this report free from influence or prejudice.

Report Authors:

Stephen van Staden Pr Sci Nat (Ecological Sciences) 400134/05BSc. Hons (Aquatic Health) (RAU);M.Sc. Environmental Management (RAU).Field of expertise:Wetland, aquatic and terrestrial ecology.

taden

Date: 29 October 2016

Stephen van Staden



EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Scientific Aquatic Services (SAS) was appointed to undertake a Present Ecological State (PES) and Ecological Importance and Sensitivity (EIS) analysis of the aquatic resources as part of a risk assessment for the proposed Doornhoek mining project, between the towns of Zeerust and Groot Marico within the North-West Province, hereafter referred to as the 'study area'. A feasibility study was conducted in October 2014, where the Present Ecological State of the aquatic resources in the vicinity of the study area was assessed. A further study of the aquatic resources present was conducted in May 2016 as part of the baseline assessment for the proposed Doornhoek mining project.

The following general conclusions were drawn upon completion of the literature review:

According to the North West Biodiversity sector Plan (NW BSP 2015) the Marico River system, including its associated tributaries is a highly ecologically significant aquatic ecosystem as highlighted by them being designated as priority rivers (FEPA Rivers). The system is also defined as an aquatic Critical Biodiversity 2 (CBA2).CBA2 according to the 2008 CBA dataset areas are near natural landscape with the following attributes these classifications are due to the clean, free-flowing nature of the Marico River and the presence of the Vulnerable Marico barb (*Barbus motebensis*) and the Near Threatened Barbus sp. 'Waterberg barb' which is considered near threatened and occurs in the upper reaches of the Klein Marico River system as well as the Groot Marico and Koster River systems. The upper reaches the Marico river are in a natural or near-natural ecological state (ecological category A/B: largely natural) are important as they represent a representative sample of the diversity of freshwater ecosystem types in the province that should remain in a good ecological state.

According to the NW BSP (2015) Marico River Conservation Association has been established by the landowners whom are striving for Biosphere Reserve status The upper Groot Marico River and tributaries are also important for species evolutionary processes as the different catchments support three genetically distinct populations of the Vulnerable Marico barb (*Barbus motebensis*). Diversification of fish and other aquatic organisms is likely to be a phenomenon common to all upper catchments of rivers arising in the Swartruggens and Magaliesberg mountains. The rivers and associated catchments that support threatened fish species are Fish Sanctuary Areas, which are designated as Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas if in a good ecological condition (A or B ecological category) or Fish Support Areas (lower than A or B ecological category)

The Present Ecological State (PES) of the Klein-Marico River is categorised as a Class B: Largely Natural:

- > The potential instream habitat continuity modification has no rating (no discernible impact);
- The potential riparian/wetland habitat continuity modification, the potential riparian/wetland zone modification, the potential instream habitat modification and the potential physico-chemical modification levels has a small impact rating (modification is limited to a few localities);
- The potential instream flow modification is moderately modified (modifications are only present at a small number of localities);

The Ecological Importance is considered moderately modified:

- > The number of fish species estimated per sub quaternary reach is 5;
- The fish representivity is considered low;
- The fish rarity per secondary class (IRAR) is considered low;
- The Ecological Importance of the riparian-wetland-instream vertebrates (excluding fish) rating is low;
- The riparian-wetland natural vegetation importance, which is based on the percentage of natural vegetation within 500m is considered very high;
- > The riparian-wetland natural vegetation importance based on expert rating is considered high;
- The number of invertebrate taxa per sub quaternary reach is 37;
- The invertebrate representivity per secondary class (IREP) is considered moderate;
- > The invertebrate rarity per secondary class (IRAR) is considered high;
- The habitat diversity class is considered low;
- The habitat size (Length) class are considered very low;
- The instream migration link class is very high;
- The riparian-wetland zone mitigation link is very high;



- The riparian-wetland zone habitat integrity class is high;
- > The instream habitat integrity class is very high.

The ecological sensitivity is considered moderate:

- The fish and invertebrate physio-chemical sensitivity description is high, meaning that the species require moderate unmodified physic-chemical conditions to survive and breed;
- The fish no-flow sensitivity description and the invertebrate velocity sensitivity is high, meaning that the species require flow during certain phases of the life cycle to breed in particular habitats (often fast flows). Generally, increased habitat suitability and availability resulting from increased flow can be expected to benefit such species, flow will stimulate breeding activities and stimulate migration;
- The riparian-wetland-instream vertebrates (excluding fish) intolerance water level/flow changes description is low, meaning that the taxa within the system have a low sensitivity to water levels and flow changes. Suitable level or flow will benefit taxa but they do not have a crucial dependence on this;
- > The stream size sensitivity to modified flow/water level changes description is not assessed;
- > The riparian-wetland vegetation intolerance to water level changes is low.

The following general conclusions were drawn upon completion of the aquatic assessment:

Please note that the following pertains to the results of a feasibility assessment performed in October 2014, as well as a baseline assessment performed in May 2016. All reference to temporal comparisons thus refer to comparison of changes in data between October 2014 and May 2016.

The Klein Marico River System

Key observations relating to water quality along this section of the Klein Marico River system:

- Concentration of dissolved salts remained fairly constant both spatially as well as temporally between each of the sites assessed;
- Spatially, in the October 2014 assessment, the conductivity decreased by 16.3% between sites DHK B3 and DHK B4 but increased by 16.1% between the former and site DHK B5. Conductivity increased by 38.8% between sites DHK B4 and DHK B5;
- In the May 2016 assessment, the conductivity decreases only slightly by 7.7% between sites DHK B3 and site DHK B4;
- Temporally, the conductivity increases by 14.8% at site DHK B3 and by 26.6% at site DHK B4. This spatial and temporal data indicates that during periods of low flows salts concentrate in the Klein Marico River system;
- Slow, shallow conditions predominated at all sites. Changes in conductivity may have been influenced by slight differences in evaporation rate and river make up, geological effects and agricultural activities in the form of abstraction and watering of cattle as well as agricultural return flows;
- The water quality guideline for aquatic ecosystems (DWA 1997) states that: 1) Total dissolved salts (TDS) concentrations (i.e. as indicated by the EC measurements) should not be changed by > 15 % from the normal cycles of the water body under unimpacted conditions at any time of the year; and 2) the amplitude and frequency of natural cycles in TDS concentrations should not be changed;
- The spatial and temporal changes in conductivity along this section of the Klein Marico River thus exceeds the above recommendation prior to any mining activities in the area. The data therefore indicates substantial variation in salt concentration in the system prior to any impact from the proposed mining operation;
- Data from future monitoring studies should be used to identify temporal trends and data from this report should be used as a temporal baseline to which future data can be compared;
- The water quality guideline for aquatic ecosystems (DWA 1997) states that pH values should not be allowed to vary from the range of the background pH values for a specific site by > 5 %;
- If the upstream site DHK B3 pH value observed in October 2014 is considered a spatial and temporal reference value. The observed changes in pH value exceed the recommended percentage change range. The data therefore indicates substantial variation in pH value in the system prior to any impact from the proposed mining operation;
- However, natural pH ranges fall between 6.5 and 8.5 as was observed at each of the sites in both the October 2014 as well as in the May 2016 assessments;



- Data from report should be used as a temporal baseline to which future data can be compared. As the pH appears somewhat variable in this system from both a spatial as well as a temporal perspective, it is deemed important that the absolute pH values be monitored and that any fluctuations outside of the natural pH ranges be regarded as a red flag for impact once mining activities in the area commence;
- The water quality guideline for aquatic ecosystems (DWA 1997) states that dissolved oxygen concentrations should range between 80% and 120% of saturation. Saturation (i.e. maximum dissolved oxygen concentrations) shall in turn depend on the temperature of the water sampled (USA EPA website accessed 18 May 2013);
- Dissolved oxygen concentrations at each of the sites assessed in May 2016 are below the recommended range indicating that the lack of dissolved oxygen in the system may limit the aquatic community to some degree;
- > Data from future monitoring studies will be used to identify temporal trends;
- The temperatures observed at each of the points are deemed natural for the time of year and the nature of the systems. The observed variations can be attributed to diurnal variation between sampling times and the slight variation in the volume of water in the water bodies sampled.

Habitat integrity along this section of the Klein Marico River system:

- Based on the observations of both the October 2014 as well as the May 2016 habitat assessments, the habitat diversity and structure in terms of habitat provision for aquatic communities is deemed largely inadequate to support a diverse aquatic macro-invertebrate community under very low flow conditions. On comparison of the results of the October 2014 assessment to the results of the May 2016 assessment, it is evident that under higher flow conditions, habitat suitability is slightly improved;
- On application of the Intermediate Habitat Integrity Assessment (IHIA), for the Klein Marico River sites (DHK B3, DHK B4 and DHK B5 assessed in October 2014 and DHK B3, DHK B4 and DHKK 4 assessed in May 2016), mostly only small and moderate impacts were recorded for both instream and riparian zones habitat (Appendix 5). The DHK B5 site was not reassessed in the May 2016 assessment due to the absence of flow at this point and the results of the October 2014 assessment are thus retained;
- Large instream impacts in terms of flow and bed modifications were observed at site DHK B3 and site DHK B4. Other instream impacts at these two sites included small channel and water quality modifications and solid waste disposal. At site DHK B5, assessed only in the October 2014 assessment, a moderate instream impact in terms of water quality was noted, with smaller impacts related to water abstraction activities, flow, bed and channel modifications, exotic fauna and solid waste disposal also evident. At site DHKK 4, assessed only in the May 2016 assessment, only very small impacts in terms of flow, bed and water quality modifications were observed;
- For instream habitat zone integrity both sites DHK B3 and DHK B4 obtained a B (largely natural) classification in October 2014 and a C (moderately modified) classification in the May 2016 assessment. Site DHK B5 obtained a class B (largely natural) classification and the DHKK 4 site obtained an A (natural) classification in the May 2016 assessment;
- The variations observed are largely related to changes in flow condition at each site between the October 2014 and May 2016 assessments and are considered unrelated to any existing impacts as a result of activities in the vicinity of the proposed mining project which include but are not limited to game farming, livestock farming, agricultural activities, water abstraction and historical mining activities in the surrounding area;
- Riparian zone impacts included indigenous vegetation removal and exotic vegetation encroachment at sites DHK B3, DHK B4 and DHK B5, with some impacts as a result of erosion observed at site DHK B4. These impacts are likely related to agricultural activities, trampling by livestock and water abstraction activities. For riparian habitat zone integrity both sites DHK B3 and DHK B4 obtained B (largely natural) classifications in both the October 2014 and the May 2016 assessments. Site DHK B5 obtained a B (largely natural) classification in October 2014 and site DHKK 4 was assigned an A (natural) classification in May 2016.
- Overall scores of 73.68% (DHK B3), 78.95% (DHK B4), 84.84% (DHK B5) and 96.88% (DHKK 4) were calculated, placing sites DHK B3 and DHK B4 in a class C (moderately modified), site DHK B5 in a class B (largely natural) and site DHKK 4 in a class A (natural) condition.



Application of the Riparian Vegetation Response Assessment Index (VEGRAI) to the Klein Marico River:

The overall VEGRAI score calculated for the upper portion of the Klein Marico River falls within the EC Class E (Seriously modified) due to vegetation removal and alien vegetation encroachment. Vegetation associated with the downstream portion of the Klein Marico River falls within the EC Class C (Moderately modified) with less significant impacts encountered but water abstraction and impacts from livestock trampling and some alien vegetation encroachment were still evident.

The overall score calculated for the Klein Marico River, taking into consideration both the upper and lower portions of the river, falls within an EC Class D indicating largely modified conditions. Measures to control impacts on water loss from the system as well as vegetation removal will be important and measures to control alien vegetation encroachment will be critical.

Fish Community Assessment of the Klein Marico River:

Included in the list of expected species based on habitat availability and distribution range is the Marico barb (*Enteromius motebensis*).

The Marico barb has a very limited distribution range with very small area of occupancy. Because it is known from only approximately ten locations threatened by water abstraction for agriculture, seepage from mines via dolomitic groundwater or alien predatory fish species (*Micropterus* spp.), it has been classified as a vulnerable red data list species.

Whilst no specimens of this species were collected from assessed sites in the systems under investigation, such populations may exist on a regional scale. Various contributing factors are likely to play a role in the lack of field observations of *E. motebensis*. Very low flows observed in the May 2016 assessment as a result of severe nationwide drought conditions and the associated lack of flow connectivity are likely to have significantly affected natural migration routes and the absence is unlikely related to current impacts to water quality in the system. Should the Doornhoek mining project proceed, special effort should be made to ensure maintenance of habitat and ecological integrity of the stream to limit larger scale regional impacts on potential *E. motebensis* populations.

During the field assessments carried out in October 2014 and May 2016, the following fish species were observed:

- Enteromius paludinosis;
- > Pseudocriilabrus philander; and
- Tilapia sparrmanii.

Thus, on application of the FRAI to the fish populations of the Klein Marico River, an Ecological Category E was assigned by the Automated FRAI, while an Ecological Category D was assigned according to the Refined FRAI.

Aquatic EIS determination of the Klein Marico River

Based on the findings of the assessment it is evident that aquatic features associated with the Klein Marico River have an EIS which can be considered moderate to high. The Klein Marico River system can therefore be defined as being unique on a local to national scale due to biodiversity (habitat diversity, species diversity, unique species, rare and endangered species).

The Unnamed Tributary of the Klein Marico River

Key observations relating to water quality along this section of the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River system:

- > Conductivity values were similar to that recorded from the Klein Marico River assessment sites;
- Concentration of dissolved salts remained fairly constant but were slightly higher at the downstream (DHK B2) site;
- Conductivity increased by 20.8% between sites DHK B1 and DHK B2;
- Very slow and shallow conditions predominated at both sites. Changes in conductivity may have been influenced by slight differences in evaporation rate and river make up, geological effects and agricultural activities in the form of agricultural return flows, abstraction and watering of cattle;



- The water quality guideline for aquatic ecosystems (DWA 1997) states that: 1) Total dissolved salts (TDS) concentrations (i.e. as indicated by the EC measurements) should not be changed by > 15 % from the normal cycles of the water body under unimpacted conditions at any time of the year; and 2) the amplitude and frequency of natural cycles in TDS concentrations should not be changed;
- When viewing upstream site DHK B1 as a reference site, the spatial change in a downstream direction thus exceeds the guideline recommendation. This serves as an indication that before any impacts related to the proposed mining project, some salinisation of the system is deemed likely in the local area due to natural variations in the flow conditions and rates and the various agricultural activities taking place in the area;
- > The pH at both points can be considered neutral and is unlikely to affect aquatic biota;
- Dissolved oxygen concentration at the upstream DHK B1 assessment site was in compliance with the recommended range and the system is therefore expected to support a diverse and sensitive aquatic community, unless habitat conditions constrain the ecology of the system;
- The temperatures observed at each of the points are deemed natural for the time of year and the nature of the systems. The observed variations can be attributed to diurnal variation between sampling times and the slight variation in the volume of water in the water bodies sampled.

Habitat integrity along this section of the Unnamed Tributary of the Klein Marico River system:

- In the May 2016 assessment, the habitat diversity and structure at the DHK B1 site may be regarded as adequate to support a diverse aquatic macro-invertebrate community under the current low flow conditions, while at site DHK B2, habitat conditions may be regarded as unsuitable for supporting a diverse and sensitive aquatic community due largely to constraints in the availability of adequate flow at this point;
- On application of the IHIA to the two sites on the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River, small to critical impacts were recorded for instream zone habitat whilst small to serious impacts were reported for riparian zones habitat (Appendix 5);
- For site DHK B1, the instream zone habitat integrity assessment revealed critical impacts on water abstraction and flow modification, while for site DHK B2, with reference to the same two variables, serious and moderate impacts were respectively recorded. In addition, at site DHK B1, a large impact as a result of channel modification was observed, while a moderate impact was reported for site DHK B2 for the same variable. Both sites DHK B1 and DHK B2 presented with moderate impacts on bed modification and small impacts on solid waste disposal. Other moderate impacts include exotic fauna at site DHK B2 and inundation at site DHK B1. For instream zone habitat integrity site DHK B1 achieved a score of 25.5% (Class E, extensive loss) whilst site DHK B2 achieved 40.9% (Class D, largely modified);
- In terms of impacts to the riparian zone, the most significant impact at site DHK B1 was alien vegetation encroachment, while at site DHK B2 only a moderate impact was recorded for the same variable. Both sites presented with large impacts related to vegetation removal and moderate impacts from water abstraction, flow modification and channel modification. Small impacts associated with inundation at site DHK B1 were noted. A moderate impact as a result of bank erosion was recorded for site DHK B2. In lieu of these observations, for riparian zone habitat integrity site DHK B1 achieved a score of 71.6% (Class C, moderately modified) whilst site DHK B2 achieved 45.9% (Class D, largely modified);
- An overall score of 48.5% was calculated for DHK B1 and 43.3% for DHK B2, resulting in both being classified as Class D (Largely modified) sites.

Application of the Riparian Vegetation Response Assessment Index (VEGRAI) to the Unnamed Tributary of the Klein Marico River:

The VEGRAI ecostatus tool for this unnamed tributary yielded a VEGRAI score of 68.7% indicating moderately modified Class B conditions. The levels of integrity of the marginal and non-marginal zones were largely similar. The most significant impacts on the system occur from alien vegetation encroachment and vegetation removal. Some stress on the marginal zone from water abstraction is however also evident.

Fish Community Assessment of the Unnamed Tributary of the Klein Marico River:

During the field assessments carried out in October 2014 and May 2016, only one fish species was observed, the *Tilapia sparrmanii*. Thus, on application of the FRAI to the fish populations of the



unnamed tributary of Klein Marico River, an Ecological Category E/F was assigned by the Automated FRAI, while an Ecological Category D/E was assigned according to the Refined FRAI.

The EC calculated for the FRAI largely corresponds to that obtained for the MIRAI applied to this section of the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River. This could be expected as both fish populations as well as aquatic macro-invertebrate species are subject to and influenced by the same ecological drivers. Impacts on stream flow and stream connectivity are considered to be major contributors to the drivers of change in this system.

Aquatic EIS determination of the tributaries associated with the Klein Marico River

Based on the findings of the assessment it is evident that aquatic features associated with the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River have an EIS which can be considered moderate. As could be expected this is similar to the classification obtained for the Klein Marico River itself. The Klein Marico River system can therefore be defined as being unique on a provincial or local scale due to biodiversity (habitat diversity, species diversity, unique species, rare and endangered species).

Aquatic assessment results synopsis and conclusion

The aquatic EIS assessment performed is in agreement with literature cited. Aquatic features associated with the Klein Marico River system were found to have an EIS which can be considered "moderate". The Klein Marico River system can therefore be defined as being unique on a provincial or local scale due to biodiversity and often have substantial capacity for use. Based on the aquatic communities present, it is evident that impacts on stream flow and stream connectivity are considered to be major contributors to the drivers of change in this system, with special mention of the fish communities expected.

Impact Assessment

In addition to the various localities earmarked for mining within the mining rights area, four possible infrastructure layout options are under consideration for the proposed Doornhoek mining project. Depending on the final layout chosen, the proposed Doornhoek mining project may result in a direct impact to the aquatic resources present in this area should mitigation not take place to avoid this and minimise the impacts, with special mention of Layout Option 2, which is located within a drainage line associated with the upper reaches of the Klein Marico River. These impacts are likely to, in turn, result in the loss of recharge to the downstream portions of the Klein Marico River and in turn to the Groot Marico River further along in the catchment. The Precautionary Principal was strictly applied in the assessment and the assessment of impacts is considered conservative. Furthermore in the light of precaution and based on the findings of this study, it is recommended that Layout Option 4 be investigated as the preferred option, with Layout Options 1 and 3 as alternatives. Careful management of edge effects resulting in loss of indigenous vegetation and alien vegetation encroachment, as well as careful management of the dirty water seepage related to any proposed infrastructure is deemed essential to maintaining habitat integrity and water quality integrity of the aquatic resources in the vicinity of the study area. Mitigation of seepage to the groundwater aquifers present is of specific concern as contamination of the groundwater resources is likely to affect habitat condition locally, as well as affect habitat and water quality integrity of the aquatic resources further downstream on a regional scale. In addition, the groundwater resources of these areas are valuable for water input to various aquifers and springs both locally and regionally.

Open cast mining activities are likely to result in an ever increasing cone of depression as a result of dewatering activities over the operational life of the proposed Doornhoek mining project, which is likely to negatively affect the groundwater resources present as well as affect surface water recharge. Furthermore, decant of dirty water in the open cast pits will need to be carefully controlled and dirty water appropriately managed and treated in all phases of the proposed mining project.

Prior to any potential impacts from mining, the systems present are already under considerable threat from the following:

- Reduced in-stream flow, stream connectivity and catchment yield;
- Impacts from cattle watering and agricultural return flows;
- Deteriorating water quality with specific reference to salinization and decreased oxygen levels resulting from the impacts mentioned above;
- Alien vegetation encroachment;
- Erosion; and



Sedimentation.

It is deemed essential that all effort is made to ensure that impacts on the Klein Marico River and tributaries as a result of the proposed mining project are minimised. Specific mention is made of mining activities that will affect in-stream flow and stream connectivity, negative impacts on water quality, erosion and sedimentation. In addition, impacts from alien vegetation encroachment in the catchment may also occur.

The impact assessment was undertaken on all aspects of the aquatic ecology deemed likely to be affected by the proposed Doornhoek Mining Project.

This report, after consideration and description of the ecological integrity of the mining rights area and mining footprint area, must guide the Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP), authorities and potential developers, by means of recommendations, as to the viability of the proposed mining development from an ecological point of view.

The Doornhoek mining project is located within an area of increased ecological importance and sensitivity in terms of the groundwater resources present (DWA, 2012). The groundwater resources in this area play a significant role in the recharge of aquifers and of the surface water resources in the vicinity of the proposed project. Therefore, on this basis, should the project proceed it is considered likely that the project will have an ecological impact of the groundwater resources present, both within and potentially beyond the boundaries of the project. The potential for post-closure impacts on both water quality as well as water quantity, with special mention of the groundwater resources present, are of concern. Therefore, unless it is considered economically feasible to treat and/or contain all potential sources of contaminated water which may affect the receiving environment post-closure indefinitely to pre-mining water quality standards in such a way as to support the post closure land use and land capability, which supports the adjacent land uses, and to ensure rehabilitation back to natural or largely natural land capability, the project is regarded as posing a high long term impact on the regions' underground water resources in terms of fluoride contamination. In addition, should fluorides result in any precipitate, forming fluorite salts, these salts have the potential to significantly affect the surface water resources present in the form of impacts to water clarity and sedimentation. It is highly recommended that should it nonetheless be deemed appropriate to mine the resource from a cumulative sustainable development point of view, as much infrastructure as possible be moved to the areas where historical disturbance as a result of anthropogenic activity has occurred. In addition, the infrastructure required to access the resource must be kept to the absolute minimum. Furthermore, extensive mitigation must be applied during the construction and operational phases of the project to ensure that no impact takes place beyond the surface infrastructure footprint. In this regard particular mention is made of the management of the groundwater, surface water and the dirty water area of the mine footprint and the impact of mining related activities on the aquatic resources both in and further downstream of the mining rights area. Strict monitoring throughout the life of the mine and post-closure is required in order to ensure the health and functioning of the aquatic ecosystems is retained. The water resources will need to be rehabilitated in such a way as to support the larger drainage systems at the same level as those evident in the pre-mining condition and with particular mention of ensuring that no significant impact takes place on the groundwater, surface water quality and quantity both locally and in downstream river systems. It is deemed important that a desktop reserve model be run on the Klein Marico river at a point a short distance downstream of the proposed mining operations in order to define the Environmental Water requirements (EWR). This will allow site specific instream flow and water quality requirements to be determined which in turn will allow for improved planning and decision making to ensure that reserve requirements on a local scale can be met. In order to meet this objective, rehabilitation will need to be well planned and a suitably qualified ecologist must form part of the management team through the entire life cycle of the project and to guide the rehabilitation (including concurrent rehabilitation) and closure objectives of the mine.



TABLE OF CONTENTS

	JTIVE SUMMARY	
	OF FIGURES	
LIST C	DF TABLES	xii
ACRO	NYMS	
1	INTRODUCTION	1
1.1	Background	
1.2	Legislative Requirements	
1.3	Assumptions and Limitations	
2	METHOD OF ASSESSMENT	9
3	RESULTS OF LITERATURE REVIEW	
3.1	Conservation Importance of the Study Area	
3.1.1	North West Biodiversity sector Plan 2015	11
3.1.2	Ecoregion and water management area	
3.1.3	Ecostatus Classification	
4	AQUATIC ECOLOGICAL ASSESSMENT RESULTS	
4.1	Interest Points visited but not assessed	
4.2	The Klein Marico River	
4.2.1	Aquatic Ecostatus: Summary for the Klein Marico River	
4.2.2	Aquatic EIS determination of the Klein Marico River	
4.3	The Unnamed Tributary of the Klein Marico River	
4.3.1	Aquatic Ecostatus: Summary for the Klein Marico River	50
4.3.2	Aquatic EIS determination	
4.4	Aquatic assessment results synopsis and conclusion	
4.4.1	Literature search and comparison with aquatic EIS determination	
4.4.2	Sites of interest only visually assessed	52
4.4.3	Aquatic assessment results for the Klein Marico River and the unnamed tributary	52
5	IMPACT ASSESSMENT	
5.1	Impact Analysis	
5.1.1	Probable latent impacts	
5.1.2	Positive offsets	
5.2	Impact assessment conclusion	
6	REFERENCES	
	NDIX 1: Project Key Staff	
APPE	NDIX 2: Indemnity and Terms of Use of this Report	83
	NDIX 3: Legislative Requirements	
	NDIX 4: Method of Assessment	
	NDIX 5: IHIA	
	NDIX 6: IHAS Score sheets1	
	NDIX 7: SASS5 Score sheets1	
APPE	NDIX 8: Impact Assessment – The Plomp Method1	21



LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1:	Riverine aquatic ecological assessment points and the study area presented on a 1:250 000 topographical map
Figure 2:	Aquatic ecological assessment points and study area presented on a digital satellite image
Figure 3:	Riverine aquatic ecological assessment points and study area presented on a 1:50 000 topographical map
Figure 4:	Ecological categories (EC) eco-status A to F continuum approach employed (Kleynhans and Louw 2007)
Figure 5:	NFEPA Rivers in relation to the proposed Doornhoek mining area
Figure 6:	Map depicting the assessment points in relation to the quaternary catchments and aquatic ecoregions of the region
Figure 7:	Interest Point 1 on the upper Klein Marico River at the spring (DHK IP1). Note the severe invasion by Populus x canescens during both the October 2014
Figure 8:	(left) and the May 2016 (right) assessments
Figure 9:	May 2016 assessment (right)
Figure 10:	May 2016 assessment presented on the right
Figure 11:	assessment
Figure 12:	the right. Note the dry bed of the system
Figure 13:	29 Downstream view of site DHKK 2 visited in the May 2016 assessment on a drainage line in the vicinity of the upper reaches of the Klein Marico river. Note the dry bed of the system and the unsuitability of this site for the application
Figure 14:	of the various biomonitoring indices
Figure 15:	on the Klein Marico river. Upstream view at this point (right)
	(right)
Figure 16:	Upstream view of the DHK B3 site during the May 2016 assessment
Figure 17:	Downstream view of the DHKK 4 site during the May 2016 assessment35
Figure 18:	Upstream view of the DHK B4 site during the May 2016 assessment
Figure 19:	Downstream view of the DHK B5 site during the May 2016 assessment37
Figure 20:	HCR scores for the sites assessed on the Klein Marico River considered to be representative of conditions during both the October 2014 and May 2016 site visits
Figure 21:	Upstream view of the DHK B1 site during the May 2016 assessment



Figure 22:	Upstream view of the DHK B2 site during the May 2016 assessment	46
Figure 23:	HCR scores for the two sites assessed on the unnamed tributary of the Klein	
-	Marico River in October 2014 and May 2016.	49
Figure 24:	Footprint layout, Option 1	56
Figure 25:	Footprint layout, Option 2	57
Figure 26:	Footprint layout, Option 3	58
Figure 27:	Footprint layout, Option 4	59
0		

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1:	Location of the biomonitoring points with co-ordinates
Table 2:	Classification of river health assessment classes in line with the RHP13
Table 3:	Summary of the ecological status of the sub-quaternary catchment (SQ) reach
	A31D 01019 (Klein Marico) based on the DWS RQS PES/EIS database15
Table 4:	NFEPA Rivers in the vicinity of the study area17
Table 5:	Ecostatus of the Klein Marico River system as provided in the River Health
	Programme State-of Rivers report number 9 (March, 2005)19
Table 6:	Ecostatus of the Klein Marico River system as provided in the Department of
	Water Affairs Report Number RDM/WMA 1,3/00/CON/CLA/0312 (September
	2011)20
Table 7:	Summary of the PES, EIS and REC per resource unit of the Groot Marico River
	system as provided in the Department of Water Affairs Report Number
	RDM/WMA 1,3/00/CON/CLA/0112A (March 2012)21
Table 8:	Summary of the EWR site information for the Groot Marico River catchment
	area as provided in the Department of Water Affairs Report Number
	RDM/WMA 1,3/00/CON/CLA/0112A (March 2012)21
Table 9:	Categorisation of Groundwater Resource Units (2010) in the Marico
	Catchment Area as provided in the Department of Water Affairs Report
T 1 1 4 0	Number RDM/WMA 1,3/00/CON/CLA/0112A (March 2012)21
Table 10:	Visual description of site DHK IP1 visited during the October 2014 and the May
	2016 site assessments
Table 11:	Visual description of site DHK IP2 visited during the October 2014 and the May
Table 12:	2016 site assessments
Table 12.	2016 site assessments
Table 13:	Visual description of site DHK IP4 visited during the October 2014 and the May
Table 15.	2016 site assessments
Table 14:	Visual description of site DHK IP5 visited during the October 2014 and the May
	2016 site assessments
Table 15:	Visual description of site DHKK 1 visited during the May 2016 site assessment.
	29
Table 16:	Visual description of site DHKK 2 visited during the May 2016 site assessment.
Table 17:	Visual description of site DHKK 3 visited during the May 2016 site assessment.
Table 18:	Visual description of site DHKK 5 visited during the May 2016 site assessment.
Table 19:	Results of the assessment at site DHK B3 (The most upstream point on the
	Klein Marico River, a short distance downstream of one of the main springs
	feeding the system)
Table 20:	Results of the assessment at Site DHKK 4 (A point located in the middle of the
	segment of interest on the Klein Marico River between sites DHK B3 and DHK
	B4 and upstream of site DHKK 3. Only assessed in May 2016)35



Table 21:	Results of the assessment at Site DHK B4 (A point located in the middle of the
	segment of interest of the Klein Marico River)
Table 22:	Results of the assessment at Site DHK B5 (A point located on the downstream
	edge of the segment of interest of the Klein Marico River and downstream of
	all potential mining activities Biomonitoring indices only applied in October
T 11 00	2014 as the site was dry during the May 2016 assessment)
Table 23:	VEGRAI Ecological ecostatus output for the upper Klein Marico River
Table 24:	VEGRAI Ecological ecostatus output for the lower Klein Marico River
Table 25:	VEGRAI Ecological Category Description Scores for the Klein Marico River41
Table 26:	Summary of the results (ecological categories) obtained from the application
	of the FRAI to the Klein Marico River
Table 27:	Summary of the results of the Integrated Ecological Category for each site 43
Table 28:	Aquatic EIS determination for the Klein Marico River
Table 29:	Results of the assessment at Site DHK B1 (A hot spring forming the source of
T	a major unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River)
Table 30:	Results of the assessment at Site DHK B2 (A point further downstream on the
	unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River and downstream of all possible
T 11 04	mining activities)
Table 31:	VEGRAI Ecostatus tool output for the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico
T 1 1 00	River
Table 32:	Summary of the results (ecological categories) obtained from the application
T 1 1 00	of the FRAI to the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River
Table 33:	Summary of the results of the Integrated Ecological Category for each site 50
Table 34:	Aquatic EIS determination for the unnamed tributary Klein Marico River
Table 35:	Summary of ecological status of the study area as gleaned from literature52
Table 36:	Summary of aquatic assessment results
Table 37:	Summary of the footprint structures associated with the proposed Doornhoek
	mining project



ACRONYMS

BGIS	Biodiversity Geographic Information Systems
°C	Degrees Celsius.
DEMC	Desired Ecological Management Class
DWA	Department of Water Affairs
EAP	Environmental Assessment Practitioner
EC	Ecological Class or Electrical Conductivity (use to be defined in relevant sections)
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
EIS	Ecological Importance and Sensitivity
EMC	Ecological Management Class
EMP	Environmental Management Program
EWR	Environmental Water Requirements
FRAI	Fish Response Assessment Index
GIS	Geographic Information System
GN	General Notice
HCR	Habitat Cover Ratings
HG	Hydrogeomorphic
HGM	Hydrogeomorphic Units
IHAS	Invertebrate Habitat assessment System
IHIA	Intermediate Habitat Integrity Assessment
IH	Index of Habitat Integrity
т	Meter
МС	Management Classes
MIRAI	Macro-invertebrate Response Assessment Index
MPRDA	Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development
NAEHMP	National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act
NBA	National Biodiversity Assessment
NFEPA	National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas
NOMR	New Order Mining Rights
NSBA	National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment
NWA	National Water Act
NWCS	National Wetland Classification System
PEMC	Present Ecological Management Class
PPP	Public Participation Process
REC	Recommended Ecological Category
RHP	River Health Program
SACNASP	South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions
SANBI	South African National Biodiversity Institute
SAS	Scientific Aquatic Services
SASS5	South African Scoring System 5
VEGRAI-	Vegetation Response Assessment Index
WMA	Water Management Areas
subWMA	Sub-Water Management Area
WetVeg Grou	<i>ps</i> Wetland Vegetation Groups



1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 Background

Scientific Aquatic Services (SAS) was appointed to undertake an assessment of the aquatic resources as part of the Environmental Impact Assessment Process for the proposed Doornhoek Mining Project (hereafter also referred to as the 'study area') (depicted in Figure 1 and Figure 2).

The site for the project is located in the Ramotshere Moiloa and the Ditsobotla Local Municipalities. The project area is located between Zeerust and Mahikeng within the Ngaka Modiri Molema District Municipality. The land-use in the area is dominated by game, livestock farming and chicken farming, although some crop cultivation occurs in isolated parts of the area. The most prominent mining operation in the area is the Fluorspar Mine (Witkop Mine) that occurs to the west of the project area. Small-scale mining activities and prospecting also occur in isolated parts of the project area at present.

The proposed Doornhoek Mining Project is located within the Crocodile (West) Marico Water Management Area (WMA) and in particular the upper reaches of the Klein Marico river and its associated tributaries. It is notable that the water resources in this area are fed by springs which ensure the perennial surface flow of these systems. The diverse geology in this WMA has some of the richest mineral deposits in the world (River Health Programme, 2005).

Additional background information on the WMA and greater study area is presented in the literature research result section. Please refer to the literature search results section.



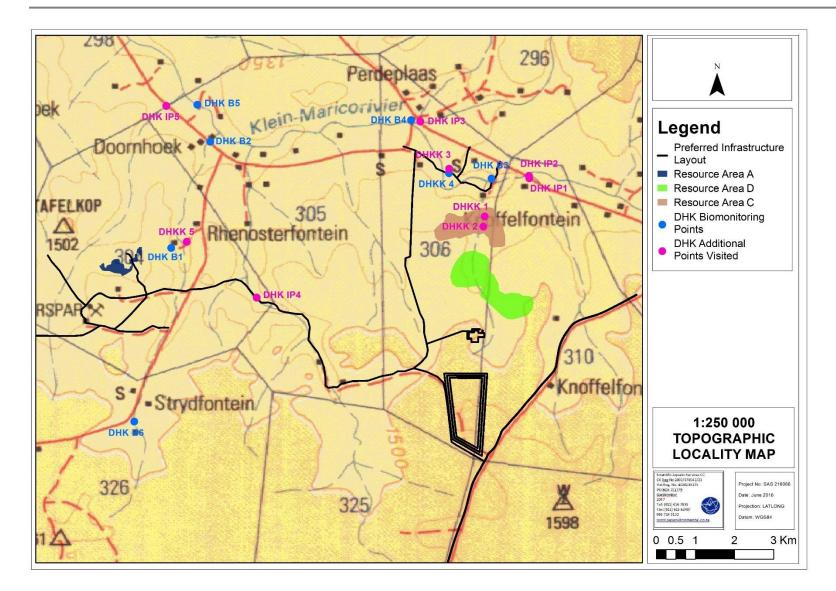


Figure 1: Riverine aquatic ecological assessment points and the study area presented on a 1:250 000 topographical map¹.

¹ For the purposes of this report, the preferred Layout Option 4 has been used for mapping purposes throughout this report, however, Options 1 and 3 may also be regarded as mining options. See Section 5 of this report.



During the feasibility study conducted in October 2014, five (DHK B1, DHK B2, DHK B3, DHK B4 and DHK B5) of the eleven sites visually assessed were subjected to further detailed aquatic assessment in order to define the Present Ecological State and Ecological Importance and Sensitivity in the vicinity of the proposed mining project. During the May 2016 baseline assessment, a further sites assessed in the feasibility study in order to obtain a comprehensive understanding of the aquatic ecology of the systems in the vicinity of the proposed Doornhoek mining project. Once again, 5 sites were subjected to further detailed aquatic assessment (DHK B1, DHK B2, DHK B3, DHK B4 and DHKK 4).

Table 1 below presents geographic information with regards to the monitoring points on the Klein Marico River as well as points on the tributaries of this system which had sufficient flow to support an aquatic community. In addition, sites visually assessed are also presented in the table and figures below which were considered for aquatic ecological assessment purposes. Figure 2 visually presents the locations of the various points along the various river systems, assessed.

Site	Detailed Site Description	GPS coordinates		
Sile		South	East	
DHK B1	A spring forming the source of a major unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico river	25°43'15.63"	26° 8'7.98"	
DHK B2	A point further downstream on the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River and downstream of all possible mining activities	25°41'47.50"	26° 8'40.29"	
DHK B3	The most upstream point on the Klein Marico river, a short distance downstream of one of the main springs feeding the system	25°42'18.05"	26°12'33.33"	
DHK B4	A point located in the middle of the segment of interest of the Klein Marico River	25°41'29.66"	26°11'26.75"	
DHK B5	A point located on the downstream edge of the segment of interest of the Klein Marico River and downstream of all potential mining activities	25°41'16.85"	26° 8'29.55"	
DHK B6	A spring forming the source of an unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River	25°45'39.40"	26° 7'37.38"	
DHK IP1	The Spring on the Klein Marico River located to the east of the proposed mining area	25°42'17.71"	26°13'4.67"	
DHK IP2	Upstream of the Spring on the Klein Marico River located to the east of the proposed mining area	25°42'15.87"	26°13'4.44"	
DHK IP3	A small drainage line feeding into the Klein Marico river in the vicinity of point DHK B4	25°41'30.76"	26°11'34.39"	
DHK IP4	A Major drainage feature feeding into the Klein Marico River and indicated as the Klein Marico river on some maps	25°43'56.65	26° 9'18.81"	
DHK IP5	An unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River on the western edge of the study area and located downstream of an existing mining operation	25°41'17.81"	26° 8'4.00"	
DHKK 1	A small drainage line feeding into the Klein Marico river upstream of point DHK B3	25°42'82.5"	26° 12'4.63"	
DHKK 2	A small drainage line feeding into the Klein Marico river upstream of point DHK B3 and DHKK 1.	25°42'96.4"	26° 12'4.44"	
DHKK 3	A point located in the middle of the segment of interest on the Klein Marico River between sites DHK B3 and DHK B4.	25°42'16.6"	26° 11'9.71"	
DHKK 4	A point located in the middle of the segment of interest on the Klein Marico River between sites DHK B3 and DHK B4 and upstream of site DHKK 3.	25°42'22.7"	26° 11'9.70"	
DHKK 5	A small drainage line feeding into an unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico river in the vicinity of site DHK B1.	25°42'17.3"	26° 8'3.47"	

Table 1: Location of the biomonitoring points with co-ordinates



The sites selected for aquatic biomonitoring were all visually assessed along with the other potential assessment points visited. The Invertebrate Habitat Assessment System (IHAS), Intermediate Habitat Integrity Assessment (IHIA), fish Habitat Cover Ratings (HCR), the South African Scoring System version 5 (SASS5) and Macro-Invertebrate Risk Assessment Index (MIRAI) for the assessment of the macro-invertebrate community and the Fish Risk Assessment Index (FRAI) in order to assess the risks to the fish community were employed on selected points on the Klein Marico River as well as the one major unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River. The protocols of applying the indices were strictly adhered to and all work was carried out by a South African River Health Program (SA RHP) accredited assessor.



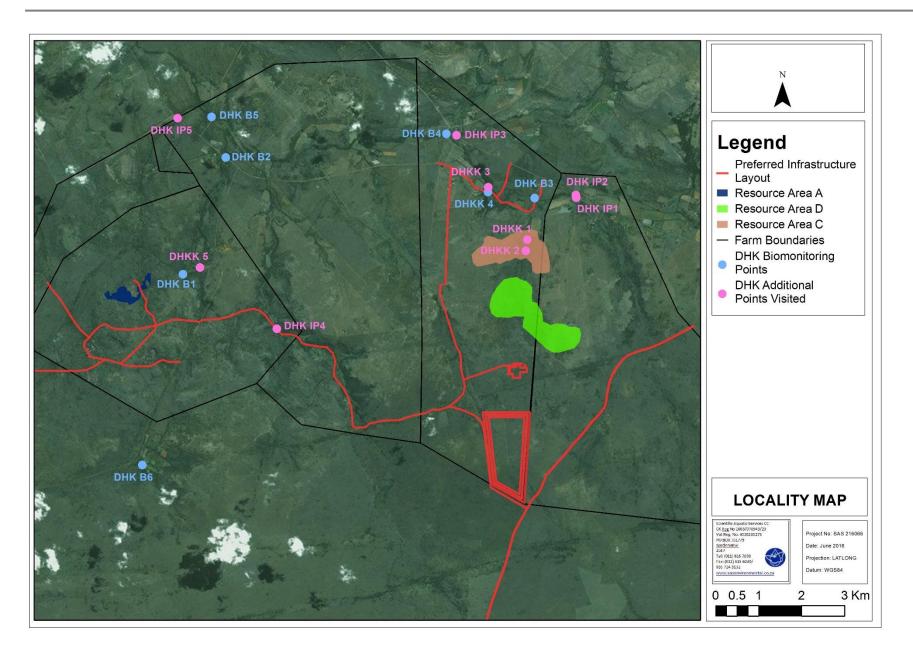


Figure 2: Aquatic ecological assessment points and study area presented on a digital satellite image.



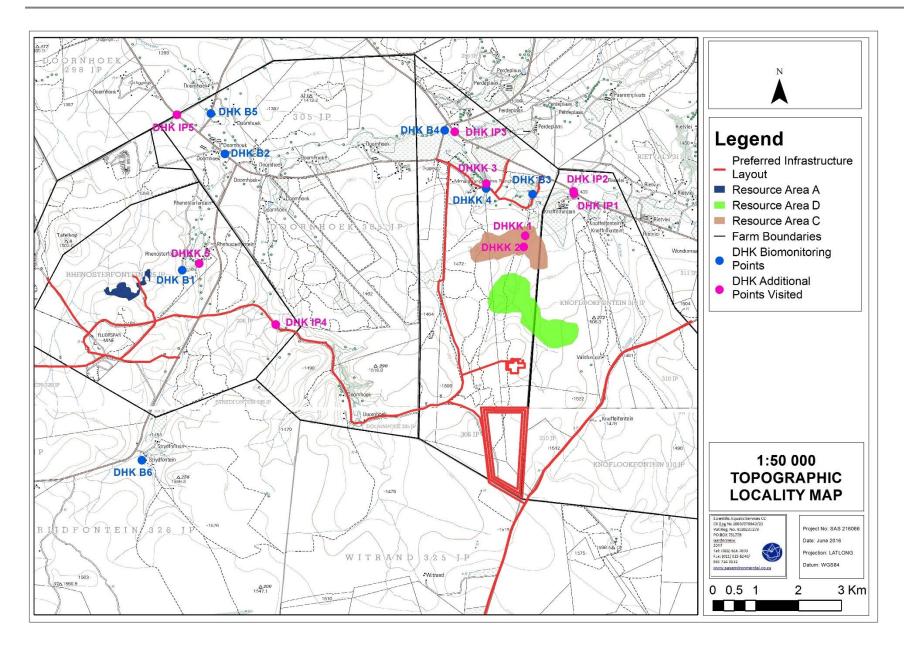


Figure 3: Riverine aquatic ecological assessment points and study area presented on a 1:50 000 topographical map.



1.2 Legislative Requirements

The following legislative requirements are triggered by the proposed Doornhoek Mining Project and are expanded on in more detail in Appendix 3:

- > Minerals and petroleum Resource Development Act (MPRDA) (Act 28 of 2002);
- National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998) with special mention of the Precautionary Principle as defined in Section 2(4)(a)(vii);
- > National Water Act (NWA; Act 36 of 1998); and
- GN 704 Regulations on use of water for mining and related activities aimed at the protection of water resources, 1999.

1.3 Assumptions and Limitations

The following points serve to indicate the assumptions and limitations with regard to the aquatic assessment:

- Reference conditions are unknown: The composition of aquatic biota in aquatic resources associated with the mining rights area, prior to major disturbance, is limited and based only on a risk assessment performed in the late low flow season of 2014 and the current baseline assessment performed in the low flow winter season 2016, following severe nation-wide drought conditions in the months preceding the assessment. For this reason, reference conditions are largely hypothetical, as based on professional judgment and/or inferred from limited data available. Based on the reference data available and based on the observations on site, the information available is, however, deemed adequate to provide a reasonable level of understanding of the systems for the study. However, an assessment of the system under summer/high flow conditions is deemed best-practice to inform the environmental assessment and authorization process for the project;
- Temporal variability: The data presented in this report are based on two assessments. One performed in October 2014 and a second assessment performed in May 2016, both of which were performed under very low flow conditions. Only limited analyses of temporal trends are therefore currently possible. As a result, the effects of natural seasonal and long-term variation in the ecological conditions and aquatic biota found in the streams are largely unknown. Based on the reference data available and based on the observations on site, the information available is, however, deemed adequate to provide a reasonable level of understanding of the systems for the study. However, an assessment of the system under high flow conditions is deemed essential to inform the environmental assessment and authorization process for the project;



- Ecological assessment timing: Aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems are dynamic and complex. It is likely that aspects, some of which may be important, could have been overlooked. A more reliable assessment of the biota would require routine seasonal sampling, with sampling being undertaken on a quarterly basis to cover seasonal variability. Based on the reference data available and based on the observations on site the information available is, however, deemed adequate to provide an understanding of the systems for the study. However, an assessment of the system under summer/high flow conditions is deemed best practice to inform the environmental assessment and authorization process for the project;
- Accessibility: The area is relatively remote within the study area and as such access to sampling sites was limited to a small degree. Due to the limitations some aspects of the aquatic ecology of the area, some which may be important may have been overlooked. Based on the reference data available and based on the observations on site the information available is, however, deemed adequate to provide the required level of understanding of the systems for the study.



2 METHOD OF ASSESSMENT

The baseline assessment is comprised of both a desktop literature review as well as field verification of the conditions of the aquatic resources in the vicinity of the study area.

Best practice methodologies (detailed information pertaining to the methodologies used can be found in Appendix 4) were used during the field assessment to assess the aquatic ecological integrity of the various sites based on water quality, instream and riparian habitat condition and biological impacts and integrity. All work was undertaken by a South African River Health Program (SA RHP) accredited assessor. The field assessment included the following:

- Potential aquatic biomonitoring points were selected on the various drainage features in the vicinity of the study area and further investigated on a site drive-through.
- Each site was investigated and visually assessed in order to determine whether the points were suitable for the application of aquatic ecological assessment indices. Where conditions were inadequate for the application of the various aquatic biomonitoring indices, only location was noted and a visual assessment was conducted.
- > At suitable biomonitoring sites, the following factors were investigated:
 - Visual conditions of the site, including an assessment of impacts on the stream, at each point;
 - On-site testing of biota specific water quality parameters including pH, electrical conductivity (EC), dissolved oxygen concentration (DO) and temperature. The results aid in the interpretation of the data obtained by the biomonitoring. Results are discussed against the guideline water quality values for aquatic ecosystems as defined by the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS), formerly the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (DWAF 1996 vol. 7).
 - Habitat suitability for aquatic macro-invertebrates was determined using the IHAS (Invertebrate Habitat Assessment System) method and was applied according to the protocol of McMillan (1998);
 - Riparian Vegetation Response Assessment Index (VEGRAI) was used as a qualitative assessment to assess the integrity of the riparian vegetation of the aquatic resources present and its response to current impacts in the area;
 - The integrity of the aquatic macro-invertebrate community was assessed using the SASS5 (South African Scoring System version 5) as defined by Dickens & Graham (2001);



- Interpretation of the results, in relation to reference scores, was made according to the classification of SASS5 scores presented in the SASS5 methodology, published by Dickens & Graham (2001) as well as according to the SASS5 data interpretation guidelines (Dallas 2007);
- Macro-invertebrate Response Assessment Index (MIRAI) was applied to provide an approach to deriving and interpreting aquatic invertebrate response to driver changes. Aquatic macro-invertebrates expected within the system were derived from the DWS Resource Quality Information Services (RQIS) PES/EIS database;
- Fish community integrity was assessed using the Habitat Cover Rating (HCR) and Fish Habitat Assessment (FHA) as well as the Fish Response Assessment Index (FRAI).

Based on the desktop and field assessments the Ecological Importance and Sensitivity (EIS) of the aquatic resources in the area is derived and an EIS category can be assigned.

On completion of the baseline assessment, a detailed impact assessment (detailed methodology provided in Appendix 3) based on the Plomp Method (Plomp, 2004) was undertaken to assess the magnitude and severity of any potential impacts associated with the proposed Doornhoek mining project. Impacts are discussed and suitable mitigation measures provided where possible.



3 RESULTS OF LITERATURE REVIEW

3.1 Conservation Importance of the Study Area

3.1.1 North West Biodiversity sector Plan 2015

According to the North West Biodiversity sector Plan (NW BSP 2015) the Marico River system, including its associated tributaries is a highly ecologically significant aquatic ecosystem as highlighted by them being designated as priority rivers (FEPA Rivers). The system is also defined as an aquatic Critical Biodiversity 2 (CBA2) according to the 2008 dataset (2015 dataset is not currently available for download).CBA2 areas are near natural landscape with the following attributes:

- > Ecosystems and species largely intact and undisturbed;
- Areas with intermediate irreplaceability or some flexibility in terms of area required to meet biodiversity targets. There are options for loss of some components of biodiversity in these landscapes without compromising the ability to achieve targets, although loss of these sites would require alternative sites to be added to the portfolio of CBAs.
- These are landscapes that are approaching but have not passed their limits of acceptable change (READ, 2015).

The classification as a FEPA and CBA 2 is due to the clean, free-flowing nature of the Marico River and the presence of the Vulnerable Marico barb (*Barbus motebensis*) and the Near Threatened Barbus sp. 'Waterberg barb' which is considered near threatened and occurs in the upper reaches of the Klein Marico River system as well as the Groot Marico and Koster River systems. The upper reaches the Marico river are in a natural or near-natural ecological state (ecological category A/B: largely natural) are important as they represent a representative sample of the diversity of freshwater ecosystem types in the province that should remain in a good ecological state.

According to the NW BSP (2015) Marico River Conservation Association has been established by the landowners whom are striving for Biosphere Reserve status The upper Groot Marico River and tributaries are also important for species evolutionary processes as the different catchments support three genetically distinct populations of the Vulnerable Marico barb (*Barbus motebensis*). Diversification of fish and other aquatic organisms is likely to be a phenomenon common to all upper catchments of rivers arising in the Swartruggens and Magaliesberg mountains. The rivers and associated catchments that support threatened fish



species are Fish Sanctuary Areas, which are designated as Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas if in a good ecological condition (A or B ecological category) or Fish Support Areas (lower than A or B ecological category)

3.1.2 Ecoregion and water management area

When assessing the ecology of any area (aquatic or terrestrial), it is important to know which ecoregion the area is located within. This knowledge allows for improved interpretation of data to be made, since reference information and representative species lists are often available on this level of assessment, which aids in guiding the assessment.

The Doornhoek Project Area falls within the Western Bankenveld ecoregion and is located within the A31D quaternary catchment. The south-eastern tip of the mining rights area also occurs within the Highveld ecoregion. However, the area within the Highveld ecoregion is very limited and did not contain any major drainage lines that were assessed.

The project area falls within the Crocodile (West) Marico Water Management Area (WMA) which lies primarily within the North West Province. The following information on this WMA has been gleaned from the State-of-Rivers Report Number 9 (River Health Programme, 2005).

The Crocodile and Marico Rivers are the two main rivers in this WMA. After their confluence, they form the Limpopo River. More than 50% of the total water use in the WMA comprises urban, industrial and mining use. Approximately one third is used by irrigation and the remainder for rural water supplies and power generation. Because the requirements exceed available supply, much of the water in the WMA is being imported mainly from the Vaal River system for domestic and industrial use purposes.

Climatic conditions in the Crocodile (West) Marico WMA are temperate and vary from east (semi-arid) to west (dry). Rainfall is strongly seasonal, with most rainfall occurring as thunderstorms during the summer period (October to April). Mean annual rainfall ranges from 400 to 800 mm and decreases from the eastern to the western side of the WMA. Mean annual temperature range is 18 °C to 20 °C.

The fairly uniform terrain has a diverse geology and some of the richest mineral deposits in the world. North of the Magaliesberg Mountains, the geology is dominated by the Bushveld Igneous Complex. In the Upper Crocodile sub-catchment dolomitic rock is found whilst the rest of the catchment consists of sedimentary rock. Soil types are broadly classified as either



moderate to deep sandy loam (southern and far eastern regions) as well as moderate to deep clayey loam (rest of catchment).

Vegetation types are characterised by Mixed Bushveld vegetation type that varies from dense, short bushveld to more open tree savannah.

3.1.3 Ecostatus Classification

Water resources are generally classified according to the degree of modification or level of impairment. The classes, used by the South African River Health Program (RHP), are presented in the table below and will be used as the basis of classification of the systems in future field studies.

Class	Description
Α	Unmodified, natural.
В	Largely natural, with few modifications.
С	Moderately modified.
D	Largely modified.
Е	Extensively modified.
F	Critically modified.

Table 2: Classification of river health assessment classes in line with the RHP

In addition, the ecological category (EC) classification will be employed using the eco-status A to F continuum approach (Kleynhans and Louw 2007). This approach allows for boundary categories denoted as B/C, C/D etc., as illustrated in Figure 4.



Figure 4: Ecological categories (EC) eco-status A to F continuum approach employed (Kleynhans and Louw 2007)

Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) Resource Quality Information Services (RQIS) PES/EIS database

The PES/EIS database, as developed by the DWS RQIS department, was utilised to obtain additional background information on the project area. The PES/EIS database has been made available to consultants since mid-August 2014. The information from this database is based on information at a sub-quaternary catchment reach (subquat reach) level with the descriptions of the aquatic ecology based on the information collated by the DWS RQIS department from all reliable sources of reliable information such as SA RHP sites, EWR sites and Hydro WMS sites.



In this regard, information for sub-quaternary catchment reach (SQR) A31D-01019 (Klein-Marico River) is applicable. Key information on background conditions within the study area, as contained in this database and pertaining to the Present Ecological State (PES), ecological importance and ecological sensitivity for the Klein Marico River, is tabulated in Table 3. From the assessment of the PES/EIS data, the following points are highlighted which summarise the data:

The system has low to moderate levels of aquatic biodiversity with reference to fish and invertebrates. The following fish species have been previously reported and are expected in the system based on information from this point:

Barbus paludinosus Peters, 1852 Pseudocrenilabrus philander (Weber, 1897)

The following macro-invertebrate families have been previously recorded and are expected in the system based on information from this point:

Oligochaeta Baetidae 2 spp. Caenidae Coenagrionidae Gomphidae Belostomatidae Corixidae

- Gerridae Naucoridae Notonectidae Pleidae Veliidae/Mesoveliidae Dytiscidae Gyrinidae
- Haliplidae Hydraenidae Hydrophilidae Ceratopogonidae Chironomidae Culicidae Simuliidae



Table 3: Summary of the ecological status of the sub-quaternary catchment (SQ) reach A31D01019 (Klein Marico) based on the DWS RQS PES/EIS database

Synopsis (SQ reach A31D-01019 Klein Marico River)						
PES ¹ category median	Mean El ² class	Mean ES ³ class	Length	Stream order	Default EC ⁴	
B (largely natural)	Moderate	Moderate	11.9 km	2.0	С	
		PES	letails			
Instream habitat o	continuity MOD	None	Riparian/wetland zone MOD		Small	
RIP/wetland zone	continuity MOD	Small	Potential flow MOD activities		Moderate	
Potential instrean activities	n habitat MOD	Small	Potential physico- activities	chemical MOD	Small	
		El de	etails			
Fish spp/SQ		5.00	Fish average conf	ïdence	2.60	
Fish representivit class	y per secondary	Low	Fish rarity per secondary class		Low	
Invertebrate taxa/	SQ	37.00	Invertebrate average confidence		3.86	
Invertebrate representivity per secondary class		Moderate	Invertebrate rarity per secondary class		High	
El importance: riparian-wetland- instream vertebrates (excluding fish) rating		Low	Habitat diversity class		Low	
Habitat size (length) class		Very low	Instream migration link class		Very high	
Riparian-wetland zone migration link		Very high	Riparian-wetland zone habitat integrity class		High	
Instream habitat integrity class		Very high	Riparian-wetland natural vegetation rating based on percentage natural vegetation in 500m		Very high	
Riparian-wetland	natural vegetation	rating based on exp	ert rating		High	
		ES d	etails			
Fish physical-che description	ish physical-chemical sensitivity escription High Fish no-flow sensitivity		High			
Invertebrates phy sensitivity description		High	Invertebrates velocity sensitivity		Very high	
Riparian-wetland- description	Low					
Stream size sensitivity to modified flow/water level changes description					Not stated	
Riparian-wetland vegetation intolerance to water level changes description					Low	

PES = Present Ecological State; confirmed in database that assessments were performed by expert assessors;
 EI = Ecological Importance;
 ES = Ecological Sensitivity
 EC = Ecological Category; default based on median PES and highest of EI or ES means.



The Present Ecological State (PES) of the Klein-Marico River is categorised as a Class B (Largely Natural):

- The potential instream habitat continuity modification has no rating, which means that there is no discernible impact, or the modification is located in such a way that it has no impact on the habitat quality, diversity, size and variability;
- The potential riparian/wetland habitat continuity modification, the potential riparian/wetland zone modification, the potential instream habitat modification and the potential physico-chemical modification levels has a small impact rating, meaning that the modification is limited to a few localities and the impact on habitat quality, diversity, size and variability are also limited; and
- The potential instream flow modification is moderately modified, meaning that the modifications are only present at a small number of localities and the impact on the habitat quality, diversity, size and variability are limited.

The Ecological Importance is considered moderately modified:

- > The number of fish species estimated per sub quaternary reach is 5;
- > The fish representivity per secondary class (FREP) is considered low;
- > The fish rarity per secondary class (IRAR) is considered low;
- The Ecological Importance of the riparian-wetland-instream vertebrates (excluding fish) rating is low;
- The riparian-wetland natural vegetation importance, which is based on the percentage of natural vegetation within 500m is considered very high;
- The riparian-wetland natural vegetation importance based on expert rating is considered high;
- > The number of invertebrate taxa per sub quaternary reach is 37;
- > The invertebrate representivity per secondary class (IREP) is considered moderate;
- > The invertebrate rarity per secondary class (IRAR) is considered high;
- > The habitat diversity class is considered low;
- > The habitat size (Length) class are considered very low;
- The instream migration link class is very high;
- > The riparian-wetland zone mitigation link is very high;
- > The riparian-wetland zone habitat integrity class is high; and
- > The instream habitat integrity class is very high.



The ecological sensitivity is considered moderate:

- The fish and invertebrate physio-chemical sensitivity description is high, meaning that the species require moderate unmodified physic-chemical conditions to survive and breed;
- The fish no-flow sensitivity description and the invertebrate velocity sensitivity is high, meaning that the species require flow during certain phases of the life cycle to breed in particular habitats (often fast flows) for instance. Generally, increased habitat suitability and availability resulting from increased flow can be expected to benefit such species, flow will stimulate breeding activities and stimulate migration;
- The riparian-wetland-instream vertebrates (excluding fish) intolerance water level/flow changes description is low, meaning that the taxa within the system have a low sensitivity to water levels and flow changes. Suitable level or flow will benefit taxa but they do not have a crucial dependence on this;
- The stream size sensitivity to modified flow/water level changes description is not assessed; and
- > The riparian-wetland vegetation intolerance to water level changes is low.

National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas

The National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas (NFEPA) (2011), database was consulted to define the aquatic ecology of the river systems in the vicinity of the proposed expansion project that may be of ecological importance. Aspects applicable to the study area and surroundings are indicated in the table below.

Area	WMA	SubWMA	FEPACODE	NFEPA Rivers	RIVCON
Study area	Crocodile (West) & Marico	Marico	Fish Support Area and Fish Sanctuary	Klein-Marico Rhenosterfontein	CDEFZ



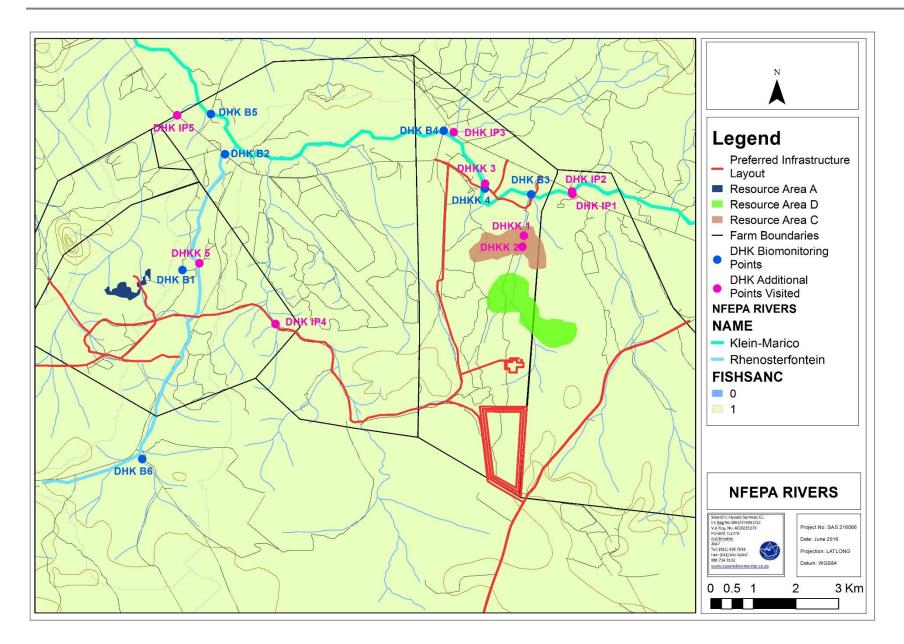


Figure 5: NFEPA Rivers in relation to the proposed Doornhoek mining area.



State-of-Rivers Report Number 9: Ecological state of rivers in the Crocodile (West) Marico Water Management Area (River Health Programme, 2005)

The following table summarises the ecological status of the Klein Marico River system as reported on during March 2005.

Table 5: Ecostatus of the Klein Marico River system as provided in the River Health ProgrammeState-of Rivers report number 9 (March, 2005)

Variable/Index	Ecostatus	Variable/Index	Ecostatus	
Overall Ecostatus	Fair	Instream Habitat Integrity	Fair (impacts from the Klein Maricopoort and Kromellenboog Dams)	
Riparian Zone Habitat Integrity	Good (low levels of development yet at Oopgenoeg and Nahoek water abstraction has resulted in wetlands drying up)	Riparian Vegetation Integrity	Fair (presence of alien vegetation and removal of some vegetation for agriculture)	
Fish Assemblage Integrity	Poor (reduced flow and localized poor water quality)	Macro-invertebrate Integrity	Poor (primarily reduced water quality but also impact of dams on flow)	
Ecological Importance and Sensitivity	Marginal/Low (overall diversity of habitat types is low but there are some locally unique areas)	Drivers of Change	 a. Water abstraction; b. Return flows from urban runoff (Zeerust area); c. Impoundment of river altering natural flow regimes; d. Sedimentation of Kromellenboog Dam; e. Alien fish (bass) in upper reaches of the Molemaneloop 	
Management Responses	 a. Identify sources of run-off that impacts on water quality; b. Clear alien vegetation from riparian zone; c. Ensure that the ecological reserve is determined and maintained; d. Map and monitor wetlands to ensure future ecological functioning; e. Control alien fish. 			

Department of Water Affairs Report Number RDM/WMA 1,3/00/CON/CLA/0312: Classification of significant water resources in the Crocodile (West) and Marico Water Management Area (Stassen, 2011)

Water quality of the Klein Marico River catchment is good in the upper reaches, but deteriorates to fair in the middle and lower reaches. Impacts pertain to urban development and the dams in the catchment where flows are largely managed on demand for irrigation purposes. High agricultural return flows are the major impacting activity in the lower catchment. Water quality has also deteriorated as a result of erosion and sedimentation. The Klein Marico River shows elevated levels of nutrients resulting from agricultural activity impacts in the catchment. There are also increased levels of toxicants in the middle reaches



of the river. The following was tabulated for the Klein Marico River in quaternary catchment A31D:

Table 6: Ecostatus of the Klein Marico River system as provided in the Department of Water
Affairs Report Number RDM/WMA 1,3/00/CON/CLA/0312 (September 2011)

Quaternary catchment	Nodes	EI	ES	PES
	Malmanieloop to confluence with Klein Marico	High	High	С
A31D	Kareespruit at confluence with Klein Marico	Low	Low	С
	Klein Marico to Klein Maricopoort Dam	Low	Low	С

Reserve Determination of the Groot Marico River

As the water resources in the Crocodile West & Marico Water Management Area are becoming more stressed due to an accelerated rate of development and changing weather patterns resulting in the scarcity of water resources, there is an urgency to ensure that water resources are able to sustain their level of use and be maintained at their desired states. The determination of the Management Classes (MC) of the significant water resources in the study area will ensure that the desired condition of the water resources, and conversely, the degree to which they can be utilised is maintained and adequately managed within the economic, social and ecological goals of the water users. The MC of the water resource will therefore set the boundaries for the volume, distribution and quality of the Reserve and Resource Quality Objectives (RQOs), and thus the potential allocable portion of a water resource for use (DWA, 2012).

The National Water Act (Act No. 36 of 1998) (NWA) is founded on the principle that National Government has overall responsibility for, and authority over, water resource management for the benefit of the public without, seriously affecting the functioning of the water resource systems. In order to achieve this objective, Chapter 3 of the NWA provides for the protection of water resources through the implementation of resource directed measures (RDM). As part of the RDM, a Management Class (MC) has to be determined for a significant water resource, as the means to ensure a desired level of protection. The purpose of the MC is to establish clear goals relating to the quantity and quality of the relevant water resource. The classification system, the Reserve and RQOs together are intended to ensure comprehensive protection of all water resources. An important consideration in the determination of RDM is that they should be technically sound, scientifically credible, practical and affordable (DWA, 2012).

The tables below show the PES, EIS and REC associated with identified Ecological Water Requirements (EWR) sites within the Marico Catchment Area, as well as the EIS ratings for Priority Wetlands identified and the present status categories of Groundwater Resource Units.



Table 7: Summary of the PES, EIS and REC per resource unit of the Groot Marico River systemas provided in the Department of Water Affairs Report Number RDM/WMA1,3/00/CON/CLA/0112A (March 2012)

EWR site number	EWR site Name	River	RU	Quaternary catchment	PES	REC	EIS
EWR1	Site below the gorge area (before confluence with Marico)	Kaaloog se loop	Kaaloog se loop	A31A	В	В	Very high
EWR2	Upstream confluence of the Sterkstroom	Groot Marico	Groot Marico 1	A31B	В	В	Very high
EWR3	Downstream of Marico Bosveld Dam	Groot Marico	Groot Marico 3	A31F	C/D	C/D	High
EWR4	Downstream of the Twasa Weir, in the Madikwe Game Reserve	Groot Marico	Groot Marico 6	A32D	С	С	High
Rapid EWR	Downstream Klein Maricopoort Dam	Klein Marico	Klein Marico 3	A31E			

Table 8: Summary of the EWR site information for the Groot Marico River catchment area as
provided in the Department of Water Affairs Report Number RDM/WMA
1,3/00/CON/CLA/0112A (March 2012)

Catchment Area	Priority Wetlands	EIS Category	Eco Class
Groot Marico	Marico Dolomitic Eye	High	В
	Molemane Dolomitic Eye	High	В
	Malmane's Loop	Moderate	C
	Bokkraal Wetland	Moderate	C
	(Upstream of tufa)		
	Rietspruit Eye	Moderate	С
	Ngotwane River Dinokana	High	В
	Eye		

Table 9: Categorisation of Groundwater Resource Units (2010) in the Marico Catchment Area as
provided in the Department of Water Affairs Report Number RDM/WMA
1,3/00/CON/CLA/0112A (March 2012)

Catchment area	Resource Unit: Quaternary Catchments	Present Status Category	Water Resource Category
Marico	A31A	С	Good
	A31B	В	Good
	A31C	С	Good
	A31D	В	Good
	A31E	A	Good
	A31F	В	Natural
	A31H	A	Natural
	A31J	A	Natural
	A32A	A	Natural
	A32B	A	Natural
	A32C	A	Natural
	A32D	A	Natural
	A32E	A	Good



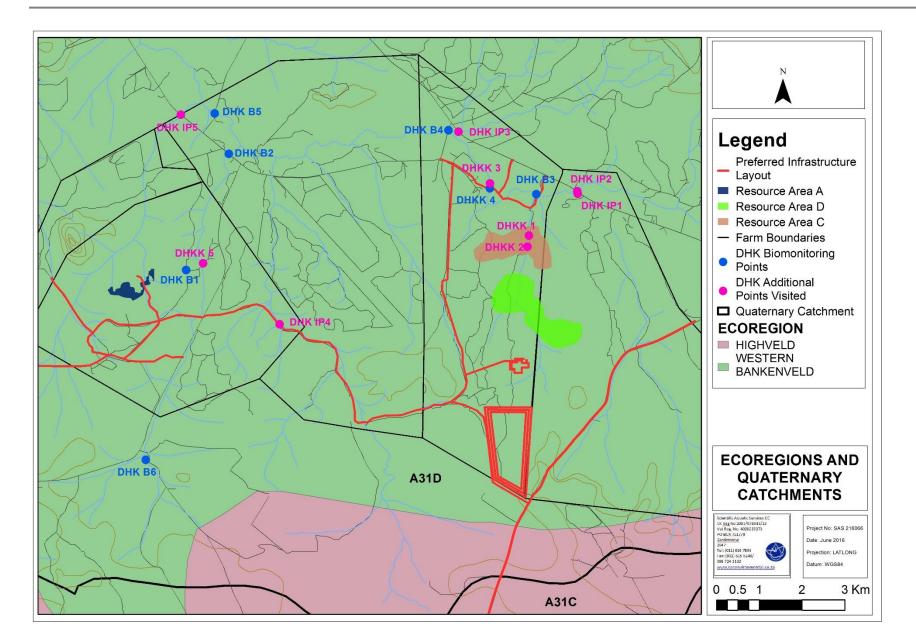


Figure 6: Map depicting the assessment points in relation to the quaternary catchments and aquatic ecoregions of the region.

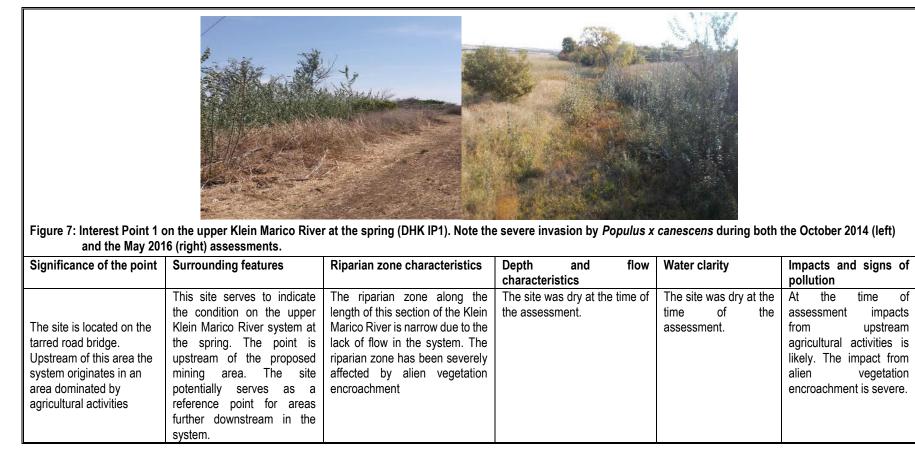


4 AQUATIC ECOLOGICAL ASSESSMENT RESULTS

4.1 Interest Points visited but not assessed

The sections below present the results of the visual assessment of the sites visited during both the feasibility study (October 2014) as well as the baseline assessment (May 2016) for the aquatic ecological assessment. These points, although not assessed in detail, were used to inform the reach based assessments undertaken as part of the detailed site assessments. In this regard, specific mention is made of the application of the VEGRAI Ecostatus tool and the IHIA habitat assessment.

Table 10: Visual description of site DHK IP1 visited during the October 2014 and the May 2016 site assessments.





F

Table 11: Visual description of site DHK IP2 visited during the October 2014 and the May 2016 site assessments.

		Der Klein Marico River (DHK IP2). his point in the May 2016 assession		en vegetation (left) obse	rved in the October 2014
Significance of the point	Surrounding features	Riparian zone characteristics	Depth and flow characteristics	Water clarity	Impacts and signs of pollution
This site serves to indicate the condition on the upper Klein Marico River system downstream of the spring. The point is upstream of the proposed mining area. The site potentially serves as a reference point for areas further downstream in the system	The site is located on the eastern boundary of the study area near to the tarred road	The riparian zone along the length of this section of the Klein Marico River is narrow due to the lack of flow in the system. The riparian zone has been severely affected by alien vegetation encroachment	The site was dry at the time of the assessment.	The site was dry at the time of the assessment.	Impacts from upstream agricultural activities are likely. The impact from alien vegetation encroachment is severe.



Г

Table 12: Visual description of site DHK IP3 visited during the October 2014 and the May 2016 site assessments.

		Marico River at Interest point 3 (De DHK IP3 site during the May 20			te the dry bed and the
Significance of the point		Riparian zone characteristics	Depth and flow characteristics		Impacts and signs of pollution
Photographs are representative of a small non-perennial tributary of the Klein Marico river near to the DHK B4 point. The point may be of significance during times of flow, potentially affecting water quality in the Klein Marico River system.	The site is located to the north of the Klein Marico River and north of the proposed mining area.	The riparian zone of the system is weakly formed due to a lack of perennial flow in the system.	The site was dry at the time of the assessment.	The site was dry at the time of the assessment.	Impacts from upstream agricultural activities are likely. The impact from fires in the area is considered significant.



Table 13: Visual description of site DHK IP4 visited during the October 2014 and the May 2016 site assessments.



Figure 10: Upstream view (left) and downstream view (right) of the upper section of a drainage line referred to as the Klein Marico river on some maps (DHK IP4) showing the very dry ephemeral nature of the system during the May 2016 assessment.

Significance of the point	Surrounding features	Riparian zone characteristics	Depth and flow characteristics	Water clarity	Impacts and signs of pollution
Photographs are representative of the upper reaches of a drainage feature referred to as the Klein Marico River on some maps and upstream of the proposed mining area. The site could potentially contribute to some degree to understanding the conditions further downstream.	The site is located in a remote area dominated by grazing activities.	The riparian zone of the system is weakly formed due to a lack of perennial flow in the system. The areas were seen to be significantly affected by livestock grazing	The system was completely dry at the time of assessment.	The site was dry at the time of the assessment.	Impacts from upstream agricultural activities are likely. The impact from livestock grazing is deemed significant.



Г

Table 14: Visual description of site DHK IP5 visited during the October 2014 and the May 2016 site assessments.

		an unnamed tributary of the Kleisment provided on the right. Note		the October 2014 asses	sment. Downstream
Significance of the point		Riparian zone characteristics	Depth and flow characteristics	Water clarity	Impacts and signs of pollution
The site is situated on a small unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River to the west of the proposed mining area and downstream of an existing operation. The site is important as a spatial reference and also as a temporal reference prior to the proposed mining of the Doornhoek deposit.	The site is located directly adjacent to the tarred road in the north eastern corner of the study area.	The riparian zone along the length of this well wooded with a fairly limited exotic vegetation component.	The system was completely dry at the time of assessment	The site was dry at the time of the assessment.	Some impact from upstream mining activities may be occurring. Some impacts from livestock grazing may be occurring



Table 15: Visual description of site DHKK 1 visited during the May 2016 site assessment.



Figure 12: Downstream view (left) of site DHKK 1 visited in the May 2016 assessment on a drainage line in the vicinity of the upper reaches of the Klein Marico river. Upstream view at this point (right) Note the dry bed of the system and the unsuitability of this site for the application of the various biomonitoring indices.

Significance of the point	Surrounding features	Riparian zone characteristics	Depth and flow	Water clarity	Impacts and signs of
The site is situated on a small drainage line in the vicinity of the upper reaches of the Klein Marico River. The site aids in providing a holistic view of the state of the aquatic resources in the study area and the associated drainage lines.	The site is located within the proposed 20 year mining area and downstream of the proposed $10 - 20$ year mining area. It is situated in an open area and can be accessed via a gravel road.	The riparian zone along the length of this drainage line is well wooded with a grassy understory and a fairly limited exotic vegetation component.	characteristics The system was completely dry at the time of assessment.	The site was dry at the time of the assessment.	pollution Some impact from upstream mining activities may be occurring. It is evident that when water is present, the site is used as a watering hole for game.



Table 16: Visual description of site DHKK 2 visited during the May 2016 site assessment.

		e May 2016 assessment on a drait this site for the application of the			n Marico river. Note the
Significance of the point	Surrounding features	Riparian zone characteristics	Depth and flow characteristics	Water clarity	Impacts and signs of pollution
The site is situated on a small drainage line in the vicinity of the upper reaches of the Klein Marico River. The site is situated upstream of site DHKK 1 and aids in providing a holistic view of the state of the aquatic resources in the study area and the associated drainage lines.	The site is located within the proposed 20 year mining area and downstream of the proposed 10 – 20 year mining area. It is situated in an open area and can be accessed via a gravel road.	The riparian zone along the length of this drainage line is dominated by grasses and a fairly limited exotic vegetation component.	The system was completely dry at the time of assessment.	The site was dry at the time of the assessment.	None evident.



Table 17: Visual description of site DHKK 3 visited during the May 2016 site assessment.

Figure 14: Downstream vi	ew (left) of site DHKK 3 visited	in the May 2016 assessment on the May 2016 asses	he Klein Marico river. Unstream	wiew at this point (rig	ht)
Significance of the point	Surrounding features	Riparian zone characteristics	Depth and flow characteristics	Water clarity	Impacts and signs of pollution
The site is situated on the Klein Marico River itself and while suitable for the application of the various biomonitoring indices was considered near enough to site DHKK 4 for a visual assessment only to be sufficient. The site aids in providing a holistic view of the state of the aquatic resources in the study area.	The site is located downstream of the proposed 20 year mining area and downstream of the proposed 10 – 20 year mining area. It is situated in an open area on a game farm and can be accessed via a gravel road.	The riparian zone along the length of this drainage line is well wooded with a fairly limited understory. There is very little to no impact at this point as a result of exotic vegetation encroachment.	The system was relatively shallow and comprised of pools and runs <1/2 m deep.	Water was clear.	None evident.



Table 18: Visual description of site DHKK 5 visited during the May 2016 site assessment.

Figure 15: Upstream view	(left) of site DHKK 5 visited in	the May 2016 assessment on a di	rainage line in the vicinity of sit	e DHK B1. Downstream	view at this point (right).
Significance of the point	Surrounding features	Riparian zone characteristics	Depth and flow characteristics	Water clarity	Impacts and signs of pollution
The site is situated on a drainage line in the vicinity of the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River. The site aids in providing a holistic view of the state of the aquatic resources in the study area and the associated drainage lines.	20 year mining area and downstream of the proposed $10 - 20$ year mining area. It is situated in an open area on a	The riparian zone along the length of this drainage line is well wooded with a fairly limited understory. There is very little to no impact at this point as a result of exotic vegetation encroachment.	This point was dry at the time of the assessment.	Site was dry at the time of the assessment.	None evident.



4.2 The Klein Marico River

The sections below present the results of the various indices applied to the sites visited during both the feasibility study (October 2014) as well as the baseline assessment (May 2016) for the aquatic ecological assessment and which were deemed suitable for biomonitoring.

Table 19: Results of the assessment at site DHK B3 (The most upstream point on the Klein Marico River, a short distance downstream of one of the main springs feeding the system).

Site DHK B3			In situ physic	o-chemical water	quality	Aquatic mad	cro-invertebrat	e community into	egrity
		at the	Parameter	October 2014	May 2016	Invertebrate	community a	ssessment (SASS	S5 and IHAS)
了这个 有很少"你你"	A CONTRACTOR OF	and the second se	pН	6.96	7.73	Parameter		October 2014	May 2016
And the second	1 10-22 10-10		EC (mS/m)	45.3	52.0	SASS5 score		70	64
THE ALL A	C. Marken B. Haya	E.	DO (mg/L)	6.23	6.12	Number of ta	xa	14	12
A REAL MERICAN		14 /H	DO (% sat)	78.79	71.72	ASPT score		5.0	5.3
State Party State	The second secon		Temp (°C)	19.4	15.7	IHAS score		65 (Adequate)	55 (Inadequate)
SALVAND DO						MIRAI score		62.1	54.4
				emporal water qua	ality	Site specific	aquatic inver	tebrate communi	ty variations
			variations (%		• -	-			
2 BANNIS /	AR THE AND REAL TRACE		Parameter	% Var compare	ed to	Parameter	% of ref	% of ref	% Var May
				feasibility			ecoregion	ecoregion	2016
				assessment (O	ctober 2014)		data Octobe 2014	r data May 2016	compared to October 2014
A AMAGE			рН	+11.1		SASS5	46.7	42.7	-8.6
			EC (mS/m)	+14.8		ASPT	84.7	89.8	+6.0
Figure 16: Upstream	view of the DHK B3 site during the	May 2016 assessment.	DO (% sat)	-0.9		IHAS	NA	NA	-15.4
Algal proliferation	Significant algal proliferation was no	ted on the rocks at this point. Both	Sensitive mac	ro-invertebrate sp	ecies	Key Drivers	of System Cha	ange	
	marginal and aquatic vegetation were	e also significantly affected as a	observed at th			Flow is s	severely affecte	ed at this point as a	a result of the road
	result of algal proliferation.			carina, Lestidae		crossing			
Depth profiles	The river consisted mostly of shallow	v riffles and deep sections in the	Fish species of	observed:				variation and dive	
	larger pools.		None					he aquatic macro-	
Flow condition	The Klein Marico River was flowing	very slowly at this point. No fast		ecies observed:				and taxa depende	ent on faster flow
	flowing water was present.		Daphnia sp.					be largely absent;	aa wuhiah awa
Riparian zone	The riparian zone along the length o							ely sensitive speci pool like habitat,	
characteristics	River is steep due to topography of the							r quality at this poi	
	has occurred in the vicinity of the bri is affected by alien vegetation encro							atic community pre	
Water clarity and	Water was clear at the time of the as		Impacts and F	ssential Mitigatio	n				the system of the
odour	No odours were evident.	ssessment.		al proliferation was				e vicinity of the pro	
Significance	This site serves as a future spatial re	eference point for all sites further		s indicative of some				Importance and S	
olgilliourioo	downstream in the catchment. The p		enrichment at t			system i	in this area sigr	nificantly;	-
	condition of the Klein Marico River p			v is affected at this	point as a				ed to exhibit broad
	activities of the proposed Doornhoel			ad crossing just up					on a temporal scale
SITE ECOSTATUS	October 2014	May 2016	point.					and habitat avail	
CATEGORY								on the system is co	
Dickens & Graham	Category D	Category D						gical condition of	the community will
(2001)						be poss		poitivity of the sur	tom to hobitat
Dallas (2007)	Category D	Category D						ensitivity of the sys stream flow, carefu	
MIRAI	Category C	Category D							limit the impact on
							nal procedures n Marico River.	will be required to	minit the impact of



Table 20: Results of the assessment at Site DHKK 4 (A point located in the middle of the segment of interest on the Klein Marico River between sites DHK B3 and DHK B4 and upstream of site DHKK 3. Only assessed in May 2016).

Site DHKK 4		In situ physic	o-chemical water quality	Aquatic mad	ro-invertebra	ate community integrity
MI I WARD		Parameter	May 2016	Invertebrate	community a	assessment (SASS5 and IHAS)
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		рН	8.04	Parameter		May 2016
		EC (mS/m)	48.0	SASS5 score		114
AND AND		DO (mg/L)	6.45	Number of ta	ха	21
		DO (% sat)	75.58	ASPT score		5.4
The Party		Temp (°C)	15.7	IHAS score		60 (Inadequate)
	A DECEMBER OF THE OWNER			MIRAI score		79.6
						rtebrate community variations from
and a start	The states of the states			reference da		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
walker S				Parameter	% of ref ec	oregion data May 2016
	A CONTRACTOR OF T					
astrant and				SASS5	76.0	
				ASPT	91.5	
23				IHAS	NA	
Figure 17: Downstre	eam view of the DHKK 4 site during the May 2016 assessment.					
Algal proliferation	None noted.	Sensitive mad	ro-invertebrate species	Key Drivers	of System Cl	hange
•		observed at th				v variation and diversity will largely
Depth profiles	The river was generally <1/2 m at this point at the time of the	Atyidae, Hydra	carina, Caenidae, Gomphidae	shape th	e structure of	the aquatic macro-invertebrate
	assessment.	Pyralidae, Phil				nt and taxa dependent on faster flow
Flow condition	The Klein Marico River was flowing slowly at this point. No fast flowing	Fish species of	observed:			be largely absent;
<u> </u>	water was present.	None				sensitive species, with special mention
Riparian zone	The riparian vegetation is relatively sparse and consists of a mix of		ecies observed:			h are adapted to slow flowing pool
characteristics	sedges, grasses, shrubs and riparian trees.	Daphnia sp.				dication that the water quality at this
Material and the second	Motor was also at the first of the second sect	Tadpoles				ely to limit the aquatic community
Water clarity and odour	Water was clear at the time of the assessment. No odours were evident.	No impacts and E	Essential Mitigation	present.		r system is expected to exhibit broad
Significance	The point also serves to indicate the condition of the Klein Marico	No impacts we	ie observeu.			ommunity integrity on a temporal scale
Significance	River prior to any effects as a result of the activities of the proposed					w and habitat availability in the
	Doornhoek mining project.					on the system is collected, better
						logical condition of the community will
SITE ECOSTATUS	May 2016			be possi		
CATEGORY				Due to t	he degree of s	sensitivity of the system to habitat
Dickens & Graham	Category B					nstream flow, careful design and
(2001)						s will be required to limit the impact on
Dallas (2007)	Category C/D			the Kleir	n Marico River	
MIRAI	Category B					



Table 21: Results of the assessment at Site DHK B4 (A point located in the middle of the segment of interest of the Klein Marico River).

Site DHK B4			In situ physic	o-chemical water	quality	Aquatic mad	cro-invertebra	te community inte	grity		
	at the address	2	Parameter	October 2014	May 2016	Invertebrate	community a	ssessment (SASS	5 and IHAS)		
1 View	All the transfer of the second second		pН	7.82	7.91	Parameter		October 2014	May 2016		
CARA AND			EC (mS/m)	37.9	48.0	SASS5 score	9	67	70		
ANG TO SERVICE	A MARTIN CONTRACTOR		DO (mg/L)	6.86	6.36	Number of ta	ха	12	15		
			DO (% sat)	85.2	71.4	ASPT score		5.6	4.7		
- the first of the second			Temp (°C)	18.5	13.7	IHAS score		57 (Inadequate)	44 (Inadequate)		
						MIRAI score 62.1 64.0 Site specific aquatic invertebrate community variation:			64.0		
			Site specific t variations (%	emporal water qua	ality	Site specific	aquatic inver	tebrate communi	ty variations		
			Parameter	% Var compare	ed to	Parameter	% of ref	% of ref	% Var May		
			i arameter	feasibility		i urumeter	ecoregion	ecoregion	2016		
1. J. J. J. M.	ALC: NO PARTY OF					assessment (October 2014)			data October		compared to
7 4 4 Par 1 4 4 P	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				,		2014	er data May 2016	October 2014		
Sec. Sec.	Friend - The second		pН	+1.2		SASS5	44.7	46.7	+4.5		
10 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	and a state of the state		EC (mS/m)	+26.6		ASPT	94.9	79.7	-16.1		
Figure 18: Upstream	n view of the DHK B4 site during the N	May 2016 assessment.	DO (% sat)	-16.2		IHAS	NA	NA	-22.8		
Algal proliferation	None observed.			ro-invertebrate sp	pecies		of System Ch				
	The river equated meetly of shellow		observed at this point:			Flow is severely affected at this point as a result of the road					
	The river consisted mostly of shallow glides and deep sections in the										
Depth profiles		glides and deep sections in the		Caenidae, Lestidae		crossing					
· ·	larger pools.		Fish species	observed:		Lack of	significant flow	variation and diver			
· ·	larger pools. The Klein Marico River was flowing ve		Fish species	observed: ani x 5		Lack of shape the shape	significant flow	he aquatic macro-	invertebrate		
Flow condition	larger pools. The Klein Marico River was flowing ver flowing water was present.	ery slowly at this point. No fast	Fish species Tilapia sparrm Additional sp	observed: ani x 5 ecies observed:		Lack of shape th commun	significant flow ne structure of t nity at this point	he aquatic macro- and taxa depende	invertebrate		
Flow condition Riparian zone	larger pools. The Klein Marico River was flowing value flowing water was present. The riparian zone along the length of	ery slowly at this point. No fast this section of the Klein Marico	Fish species	observed: ani x 5 ecies observed:		 Lack of shape th commun conditio 	significant flow ne structure of f nity at this point ns are likely to	he aquatic macro- and taxa depende be largely absent;	invertebrate ent on faster flow		
Flow condition Riparian zone characteristics	larger pools. The Klein Marico River was flowing version of flowing water was present. The riparian zone along the length of River is narrow and incised with a west of the length of t	ery slowly at this point. No fast this section of the Klein Marico akly developed riparian zone.	Fish species Tilapia sparrm Additional sp	observed: ani x 5 ecies observed:		 Lack of shape th communication The Kle 	significant flow the structure of the hity at this point ons are likely to in Marico River	he aquatic macro- and taxa depende be largely absent; system is expecte	invertebrate ent on faster flow d to exhibit broad		
Flow condition Riparian zone	larger pools. The Klein Marico River was flowing value flowing water was present. The riparian zone along the length of	ery slowly at this point. No fast this section of the Klein Marico akly developed riparian zone.	Fish species Tilapia sparrm Additional sp	observed: ani x 5 ecies observed:		 Lack of shape th commun conditio The Kle variabiliti 	significant flow he structure of the hity at this point ns are likely to in Marico River by in aquatic co	he aquatic macro- and taxa depende be largely absent; system is expecte mmunity integrity c	invertebrate ent on faster flow d to exhibit broad n a temporal scale		
Flow condition Riparian zone	larger pools. The Klein Marico River was flowing variable flowing water was present. The riparian zone along the length of River is narrow and incised with a we Trees dominate the area and the ban understory. Water was very discoloured at the time	ery slowly at this point. No fast this section of the Klein Marico akly developed riparian zone. ks are categorised with a sparse	 Fish species of Tilapia sparrm. Additional sp Frogs and tadp Impacts and I 	bbserved: ani x 5 ecies observed: poles. Essential Mitigatio		 Lack of shape th commun conditio The Kle variabiliti 	significant flow he structure of the hity at this point ns are likely to in Marico River by in aquatic co	he aquatic macro- and taxa depende be largely absent; system is expecte	invertebrate ent on faster flow d to exhibit broad n a temporal scale		
Flow condition Riparian zone characteristics Water clarity and odour	larger pools. The Klein Marico River was flowing veriflowing water was present. The riparian zone along the length of River is narrow and incised with a we. Trees dominate the area and the ban understory. Water was very discoloured at the time No odours were evident.	ery slowly at this point. No fast this section of the Klein Marico akly developed riparian zone. ks are categorised with a sparse ne of the assessment.	 Fish species of Tilapia sparrm. Additional sp Frogs and tadp Frogs and tadp Impacts and Flow is affected 	bbserved: ani x 5 ecies observed: boles. Essential Mitigatio d at this point as a l	result of the	 Lack of shape th commun conditio The Kle variabiliti due to v system; This poi 	significant flow ne structure of the nity at this point ns are likely to in Marico River ty in aquatic co ariations in flow nt is largely affe	the aquatic macro- and taxa depender be largely absent; system is expecter mmunity integrity c v and habitat availated ected by removal o	invertebrate ent on faster flow d to exhibit broad n a temporal scale ability in the f indigenous		
Flow condition Riparian zone characteristics Water clarity and odour	larger pools. The Klein Marico River was flowing variable flowing water was present. The riparian zone along the length of River is narrow and incised with a we. Trees dominate the area and the ban understory. Water was very discoloured at the tim No odours were evident. The point serves as a spatial reference	ery slowly at this point. No fast this section of the Klein Marico akly developed riparian zone. ks are categorised with a sparse ne of the assessment.	 Fish species of Tilapia sparrm. Additional sp Frogs and tadp Frogs and tadp Impacts and Filow is affecte road crossing j 	bbserved: ani x 5 ecies observed: boles. Essential Mitigatio d at this point as a l ust upstream of this	result of the s point.	 Lack of shape th commun conditio The Kle variabiliti due to v system; This poi vegetati 	significant flow ne structure of the nity at this point ns are likely to in Marico River ty in aquatic co ariations in flow nt is largely affe on, some encro	the aquatic macro- and taxa depender be largely absent; system is expecter mmunity integrity of and habitat availated ected by removal op pachment of exotic	invertebrate ent on faster flow d to exhibit broad in a temporal scale ability in the f indigenous vegetation		
Flow condition Riparian zone characteristics	larger pools. The Klein Marico River was flowing veriflowing water was present. The riparian zone along the length of River is narrow and incised with a we. Trees dominate the area and the ban understory. Water was very discoloured at the tim No odours were evident. The point serves as a spatial reference from the downstream DHK B5 point c	ery slowly at this point. No fast this section of the Klein Marico akly developed riparian zone. ks are categorised with a sparse ne of the assessment. Se for the system to which data can be compared to. The point	 Fish species of Tilapia sparrm. Additional sp Frogs and tadp Frogs and tadp Flow is affecte road crossing j Some debris a 	bbserved: ani x 5 ecies observed: boles. Essential Mitigatio d at this point as a ust upstream of this nd old tyres were o	result of the s point. bserved at	 Lack of shape th commun conditio The Kle variabilit due to v system; This poi vegetati species. 	significant flow he structure of the hity at this point ns are likely to in Marico River ty in aquatic co ariations in flow nt is largely affo on, some encro- instream sedin	the aquatic macro- and taxa depender be largely absent; system is expecter mmunity integrity of and habitat availated ected by removal of bachment of exotic mentation and debi	invertebrate ent on faster flow d to exhibit broad in a temporal scale ability in the f indigenous vegetation ris observed, which		
Flow condition Riparian zone characteristics Water clarity and odour	larger pools. The Klein Marico River was flowing veriflowing water was present. The riparian zone along the length of River is narrow and incised with a we. Trees dominate the area and the ban understory. Water was very discoloured at the time No odours were evident. The point serves as a spatial reference from the downstream DHK B5 point c also serves to indicate the condition of	ery slowly at this point. No fast this section of the Klein Marico akly developed riparian zone. ks are categorised with a sparse ne of the assessment. See for the system to which data an be compared to. The point of the Klein Marico River prior to	Fish species of Tilapia sparrm. Additional sp Frogs and tadp Frogs and tadp Flow is affecte road crossing j Some debris a this point and s	bbserved: ani x 5 ecies observed: boles. Essential Mitigatio d at this point as a l ust upstream of this	result of the s point. bserved at	 Lack of shape th commun conditio The Kle variabilit due to v system; This poi vegetati species, affects t 	significant flow he structure of the hity at this point ns are likely to in Marico River ty in aquatic co ariations in flow nt is largely affe on, some encro- instream sedin he stream subs	the aquatic macro- and taxa dependent be largely absent; system is expecter mmunity integrity of and habitat availated ected by removal of bachment of exotic mentation and debistrate to some degri	invertebrate ent on faster flow d to exhibit broad in a temporal scale ability in the f indigenous vegetation ris observed, which ree;		
Flow condition Riparian zone characteristics Water clarity and odour	larger pools. The Klein Marico River was flowing water was present. The riparian zone along the length of River is narrow and incised with a wey Trees dominate the area and the ban understory. Water was very discoloured at the time No odours were evident. The point serves as a spatial reference from the downstream DHK B5 point c also serves to indicate the condition c any effects as a result of the activities	ery slowly at this point. No fast this section of the Klein Marico akly developed riparian zone. ks are categorised with a sparse ne of the assessment. See for the system to which data an be compared to. The point of the Klein Marico River prior to	 Fish species of Tilapia sparrm. Additional sp Frogs and tadp Frogs and tadp Flow is affecte road crossing j Some debris a 	bbserved: ani x 5 ecies observed: boles. Essential Mitigatio d at this point as a ust upstream of this nd old tyres were o	result of the s point. bserved at	 Lack of shape th commun conditio The Kle variabilit due to v system; This poi vegetati species, affects t Due to t 	significant flow he structure of the hity at this point ns are likely to in Marico River ty in aquatic co ariations in flow nt is largely affor on, some encro instream sedin he stream substitute he degree of se	the aquatic macro- c and taxa dependent be largely absent; system is expecter mmunity integrity of and habitat availated exted by removal of bachment of exotic mentation and debistrate to some degreensitivity of the sys	invertebrate ent on faster flow d to exhibit broad in a temporal scale ability in the f indigenous vegetation ris observed, which ree; tem to habitat		
Flow condition Riparian zone characteristics Water clarity and odour Significance	larger pools. The Klein Marico River was flowing water was present. The riparian zone along the length of River is narrow and incised with a wey Trees dominate the area and the ban understory. Water was very discoloured at the tim No odours were evident. The point serves as a spatial reference from the downstream DHK B5 point c also serves to indicate the condition c any effects as a result of the activities mining project.	ery slowly at this point. No fast this section of the Klein Marico akly developed riparian zone. ks are categorised with a sparse ne of the assessment. ce for the system to which data an be compared to. The point of the Klein Marico River prior to s of the proposed Doornhoek	Fish species of Tilapia sparrm. Additional sp Frogs and tadp Frogs and tadp Flow is affecte road crossing j Some debris a this point and s	bbserved: ani x 5 ecies observed: boles. Essential Mitigatio d at this point as a ust upstream of this nd old tyres were o	result of the s point. bserved at	 Lack of shape th commun conditio The Kle variabilit due to v system; This poi vegetati species, affects t Due to t changes 	significant flow he structure of the hity at this point ns are likely to in Marico River ty in aquatic co ariations in flow nt is largely affor on, some encro instream sedur he stream subs he degree of se and loss of inst	the aquatic macro- c and taxa dependent be largely absent; system is expecter mmunity integrity of v and habitat availated exted by removal of bachment of exotic mentation and debistrate to some degrees ensitivity of the sys stream flow, carefu	invertebrate ent on faster flow d to exhibit broad in a temporal scale ability in the f indigenous vegetation ris observed, which ree; tem to habitat I design and		
Flow condition Riparian zone characteristics Water clarity and odour Significance SITE ECOSTATUS	larger pools. The Klein Marico River was flowing water was present. The riparian zone along the length of River is narrow and incised with a wey Trees dominate the area and the ban understory. Water was very discoloured at the time No odours were evident. The point serves as a spatial reference from the downstream DHK B5 point c also serves to indicate the condition c any effects as a result of the activities	ery slowly at this point. No fast this section of the Klein Marico akly developed riparian zone. ks are categorised with a sparse ne of the assessment. See for the system to which data an be compared to. The point of the Klein Marico River prior to	Fish species of Tilapia sparrm. Additional sp Frogs and tadp Frogs and tadp Flow is affecte road crossing j Some debris a this point and s	bbserved: ani x 5 ecies observed: boles. Essential Mitigatio d at this point as a ust upstream of this nd old tyres were o	result of the s point. bserved at	 Lack of shape th commun conditio The Kle variabilit due to v system; This poi vegetati species, affects t Due to t changes operatio 	significant flow he structure of the hity at this point ns are likely to in Marico River ty in aquatic co ariations in flow nt is largely affe on, some encro instream sedu he stream subs he degree of se and loss of ins nal procedures	the aquatic macro- and taxa depended be largely absent; system is expecter mmunity integrity of v and habitat availated exted by removal of bachment of exotic mentation and debistrate to some degrees ensitivity of the system stream flow, carefut will be required to	invertebrate ent on faster flow d to exhibit broad in a temporal scale ability in the f indigenous vegetation ris observed, which ree; tem to habitat		
Flow condition Riparian zone characteristics Water clarity and odour Significance SITE ECOSTATUS CATEGORY	larger pools. The Klein Marico River was flowing we flowing water was present. The riparian zone along the length of River is narrow and incised with a we Trees dominate the area and the ban understory. Water was very discoloured at the tim No odours were evident. The point serves as a spatial reference from the downstream DHK B5 point c also serves to indicate the condition c any effects as a result of the activities mining project. October 2014	ery slowly at this point. No fast this section of the Klein Marico akly developed riparian zone. ks are categorised with a sparse ne of the assessment. The for the system to which data can be compared to. The point of the Klein Marico River prior to so of the proposed Doornhoek May 2016	Fish species of Tilapia sparrm. Additional sp Frogs and tadp Frogs and tadp Flow is affecte road crossing j Some debris a this point and s	bbserved: ani x 5 ecies observed: boles. Essential Mitigatio d at this point as a ust upstream of this nd old tyres were o	result of the s point. bserved at	 Lack of shape th commun conditio The Kle variabilit due to v system; This poi vegetati species, affects t Due to t changes operatio 	significant flow he structure of the hity at this point ns are likely to in Marico River ty in aquatic co ariations in flow nt is largely affor on, some encro instream sedur he stream subs he degree of se and loss of inst	the aquatic macro- and taxa depended be largely absent; system is expecter mmunity integrity of v and habitat availated exted by removal of bachment of exotic mentation and debistrate to some degrees ensitivity of the system stream flow, carefut will be required to	invertebrate ent on faster flow d to exhibit broad in a temporal scale ability in the f indigenous vegetation ris observed, which ree; tem to habitat I design and		
Flow condition Riparian zone characteristics Water clarity and odour Significance SITE ECOSTATUS CATEGORY Dickens & Graham	larger pools. The Klein Marico River was flowing water was present. The riparian zone along the length of River is narrow and incised with a wey Trees dominate the area and the ban understory. Water was very discoloured at the tim No odours were evident. The point serves as a spatial reference from the downstream DHK B5 point c also serves to indicate the condition c any effects as a result of the activities mining project.	ery slowly at this point. No fast this section of the Klein Marico akly developed riparian zone. ks are categorised with a sparse ne of the assessment. ce for the system to which data an be compared to. The point of the Klein Marico River prior to s of the proposed Doornhoek	Fish species of Tilapia sparrm. Additional sp Frogs and tadp Frogs and tadp Flow is affecte road crossing j Some debris a this point and s	bbserved: ani x 5 ecies observed: boles. Essential Mitigatio d at this point as a ust upstream of this nd old tyres were o	result of the s point. bserved at	 Lack of shape th commun conditio The Kle variabilit due to v system; This poi vegetati species, affects t Due to t changes operatio 	significant flow he structure of the hity at this point ns are likely to in Marico River ty in aquatic co ariations in flow nt is largely affe on, some encro instream sedu he stream subs he degree of se and loss of ins nal procedures	the aquatic macro- and taxa depended be largely absent; system is expecter mmunity integrity of v and habitat availated exted by removal of bachment of exotic mentation and debistrate to some degrees ensitivity of the system stream flow, carefut will be required to	invertebrate ent on faster flow d to exhibit broad in a temporal scale ability in the f indigenous vegetation ris observed, which ree; tem to habitat I design and		
Flow condition Riparian zone characteristics Water clarity and odour Significance SITE ECOSTATUS CATEGORY	larger pools. The Klein Marico River was flowing we flowing water was present. The riparian zone along the length of River is narrow and incised with a we Trees dominate the area and the ban understory. Water was very discoloured at the tim No odours were evident. The point serves as a spatial reference from the downstream DHK B5 point c also serves to indicate the condition c any effects as a result of the activities mining project. October 2014	ery slowly at this point. No fast this section of the Klein Marico akly developed riparian zone. ks are categorised with a sparse ne of the assessment. The for the system to which data can be compared to. The point of the Klein Marico River prior to so of the proposed Doornhoek May 2016	Fish species of Tilapia sparrm. Additional sp Frogs and tadp Frogs and tadp Flow is affecte road crossing j Some debris a this point and s	bbserved: ani x 5 ecies observed: boles. Essential Mitigatio d at this point as a ust upstream of this nd old tyres were o	result of the s point. bserved at	 Lack of shape th commun conditio The Kle variabilit due to v system; This poi vegetati species, affects t Due to t changes operatio 	significant flow he structure of the hity at this point ns are likely to in Marico River ty in aquatic co ariations in flow nt is largely affe on, some encro instream sedu he stream subs he degree of se and loss of ins nal procedures	the aquatic macro- and taxa depended be largely absent; system is expecter mmunity integrity of v and habitat availated exted by removal of bachment of exotic mentation and debistrate to some degrees ensitivity of the system stream flow, carefut will be required to	invertebrate ent on faster flow d to exhibit broad in a temporal scale ability in the f indigenous vegetation ris observed, which ree; tem to habitat I design and		



Table 22: Results of the assessment at Site DHK B5 (A point located on the downstream edge of the segment of interest of the Klein Marico River and downstream of all potential mining activities Biomonitoring indices only applied in October 2014 as the site was dry during the May 2016 assessment).

Site DHK B5		In situ physic	o-chemical water quality	Aquatic macro-invertebrate community integrity			
X HA		Parameter	October 2014	Invertebrate	community	assessment (SASS5 and IHAS)	
A Martin		pН	7.59	Parameter		October 2014	
	Share and the state of the state	EC (mS/m)	52.6	SASS5 score		70	
	And and a second se	DO (mg/L)	7.39	Number of ta	ха	14	
	and street and a second s	DO (% sat)	89.75	ASPT score		5.0	
		Temp (°C)	17.4	IHAS score		54 (Inadequate)	
A Start Start Starting				MIRAI score		62.1	
						ertebrate community variations from	
	A REAL PROPERTY AND A REAL			reference da			
				Parameter	% of ref ec	oregion data October 2014	
A star at	A CONTRACTOR						
- dl				SASS5	46.7		
Can a the se				ASPT	84.7		
Participation of the				IHAS	NA		
	eam view of the DHK B5 site during the May 2016 assessment.	0 141					
Algal proliferation	Some algal proliferation was observed in the October 2014		ro-invertebrate species	Key Drivers			
	assessment.	observed at th	his point:	The Klein Marico River system is expected to exhibit broad variability in aquatic community integrity on a temporal scal due to variations in flow and habitat availability in the			
Depth profiles	Water was absent at this point during the May 2016 assessment.	Caenidae					
Flow condition	According to the assessment in October 2014, when water is present,	Fish species of None	bbserved:			by and habitat availability in the	
	the Klein Marico River is characterised by slow flows at this point.		ecies observed:			bught conditions experienced at the	
	However, water was absent in the current May 2016 assessment.	None	ecles observed.			assessment. However, this is likely to	
Riparian zone	The riparian vegetation is relatively sparse and consists of a mix of	NULLE				rsity and sensitivity of the aquatic	
characteristics	sedges, grasses, shrubs and riparian trees.					mmunity expected to occur at this	
Water clarity and	Water was clear during the October 2014 assessment, while water was		Essential Mitigation	point;			
odour	absent in the May 2016 assessment. No odours were evident.		ober 2014 assessment, limited		on, the results	s of the water quality analysis during	
			instream ecology were visually	the Octo	ber 2014 ass	essment suggests that some impact	
Significance	The riparian zone along the length of this section of the Klein Marico		gh some impact due to water			bint may limit the sensitivity of the	
	River is relatively narrow due to the limited development of the system.		m the system leading to reduced		community pr		
	The riparian vegetation is relatively sparse and consists of a mix of	instream flow a	and loss of refuge pools was		ater is presen	t, the aquatic community likely to occ	
	grasses, sedges, shrubs and trees.	considered like	ly to be occurring. Some impact	> When w		t, the aquatic community likely to occ ited to those species adapted	
		considered like on water qualit	ly to be occurring. Some impact y was also deemed possible due	 When w at this possible specification 	pint will be lim ally to slow flo	ited to those species adapted ws and still water environments;	
CATEGORY	grasses, sedges, shrubs and trees. October 2014	considered like on water qualit to the algal gro	ly to be occurring. Some impact y was also deemed possible due wth observed in the system and	 When w at this post specification Due to the specification 	oint will be lim ally to slow flo ne degree of s	ited to those species adapted ws and still water environments; sensitivity of the system to habitat	
CATEGORY Dickens & Graham	grasses, sedges, shrubs and trees.	considered like on water qualit to the algal gro some impact fr	ly to be occurring. Some impact y was also deemed possible due wth observed in the system and om livestock watering was	 When w at this pu specifica Due to the changes 	bint will be lim ally to slow flo ne degree of s and loss of in	ws and still water environments; sensitivity of the system to habitat nstream flow, careful design and	
CATEGORY Dickens & Graham (2001)	grasses, sedges, shrubs and trees. October 2014 Category D	considered like on water qualit to the algal gro some impact fr observed. The	ly to be occurring. Some impact y was also deemed possible due wth observed in the system and om livestock watering was lack of water at this point during	 When w at this period specification Due to the changes operation 	bint will be lim ally to slow flo ne degree of s and loss of in nal procedure	ited to those species adapted ws and still water environments; sensitivity of the system to habitat nstream flow, careful design and is will be required to limit the impact o	
SITE ECOSTATUS CATEGORY Dickens & Graham (2001) Dallas (2007) MIRAL	grasses, sedges, shrubs and trees. October 2014 Category D Category D	considered like on water qualit to the algal gro some impact fr observed. The the May 2016 a	ly to be occurring. Some impact y was also deemed possible due wth observed in the system and om livestock watering was lack of water at this point during assessment may be related to	 When w at this period specification Due to the changes operation 	bint will be lim ally to slow flo ne degree of s and loss of in	ited to those species adapted ws and still water environments; sensitivity of the system to habitat nstream flow, careful design and is will be required to limit the impact o	
CATEGORY Dickens & Graham (2001) Dallas (2007)	grasses, sedges, shrubs and trees. October 2014 Category D	considered like on water qualit to the algal gro some impact fr observed. The the May 2016 a water abstracti	ely to be occurring. Some impact y was also deemed possible due wth observed in the system and om livestock watering was lack of water at this point during assessment may be related to on activities taking place	 When w at this period specification Due to the changes operation 	bint will be lim ally to slow flo ne degree of s and loss of in nal procedure	ited to those species adapted ws and still water environments; sensitivity of the system to habitat nstream flow, careful design and is will be required to limit the impact o	
CATEGORY Dickens & Graham (2001) Dallas (2007)	grasses, sedges, shrubs and trees. October 2014 Category D Category D	considered like on water qualit to the algal gro some impact fr observed. The the May 2016 a water abstracti upstream of thi	ely to be occurring. Some impact y was also deemed possible due wth observed in the system and om livestock watering was lack of water at this point during assessment may be related to on activities taking place is point, however, nation-wide	 When w at this period specification Due to the changes operation 	bint will be lim ally to slow flo ne degree of s and loss of in nal procedure	ited to those species adapted ws and still water environments; sensitivity of the system to habitat nstream flow, careful design and is will be required to limit the impact of	
CATEGORY Dickens & Graham (2001)	grasses, sedges, shrubs and trees. October 2014 Category D Category D	considered like on water qualit to the algal gro some impact fr observed. The the May 2016 a water abstracti upstream of thi drought conditi	ely to be occurring. Some impact y was also deemed possible due wth observed in the system and om livestock watering was lack of water at this point during assessment may be related to on activities taking place	 When w at this period specification Due to the changes operation 	bint will be lim ally to slow flo ne degree of s and loss of in nal procedure	ited to those species adapted ws and still water environments; sensitivity of the system to habitat nstream flow, careful design and is will be required to limit the impact of	



Key observations relating to water quality along this section of the Klein Marico River system:

(Please note that temporal comparisons in the discussion that follows refers to comparisons between the October 2014 and May 2016 assessments).

- Concentration of dissolved salts remained fairly constant both spatially as well as temporally between each of the sites assessed;
- Spatially, in the October 2014 assessment, the conductivity decreased by 16.3% between sites DHK B3 and DHK B4 but increased by 16.1% between the former and site DHK B5. Conductivity increased by 38.8% between sites DHK B4 and DHK B5;
- In the May 2016 assessment, the conductivity decreases only slightly by 7.7% between sites DHK B3 and site DHK B4;
- Temporally, the conductivity increases by 14.8% at site DHK B3 and by 26.6% at site DHK B4. This spatial and temporal data indicates that during periods of low flows salts concentrate in the Klein Marico River system;
- Slow, shallow conditions predominated at all sites. Changes in conductivity may have been influenced by slight differences in evaporation rate and river make up, geological effects and agricultural activities in the form of abstraction and watering of cattle as well as agricultural return flows;
- The water quality guideline for aquatic ecosystems (DWA 1997) states that: 1) Total dissolved salts (TDS) concentrations (i.e. as indicated by the EC measurements) should not be changed by > 15 % from the normal cycles of the water body under unimpacted conditions at any time of the year; and 2) the amplitude and frequency of natural cycles in TDS concentrations should not be changed;
- The spatial and temporal changes in conductivity along this section of the Klein Marico River thus exceeds the above recommendation prior to any mining activities in the area;
- The data therefore shows significant natural variation in the system prior to mining in the area;
- Data from future monitoring studies should be used to identify temporal trends and data from this report should be used as a temporal baseline to which future data can be compared;
- The water quality guideline for aquatic ecosystems (DWA 1997) states that pH values should not be allowed to vary from the range of the background pH values for a specific site by > 5 %;
- If the upstream site DHK B3 pH value observed in October 2014 is considered a spatial and temporal reference value. The observed changes in pH value exceed the recommended percentage change range;



- However, natural pH ranges fall between 6.5 and 8.5 as was observed at each of the sites in both the October 2014 as well as in the May 2016 assessments;
- Data from report should be used as a temporal baseline to which future data can be compared. As the pH appears somewhat variable in this system from both a spatial as well as a temporal perspective under pre-mining conditions, it is deemed important that the absolute pH values be monitored and that any fluctuations outside of the natural pH ranges be regarded as a red flag for impact once mining activities in the area commence;
- The water quality guideline for aquatic ecosystems (DWA 1997) states that dissolved oxygen concentrations should range between 80% and 120% of saturation. Saturation (i.e. maximum dissolved oxygen concentrations) shall in turn depend on the temperature of the water sampled (USA EPA website accessed 18 May 2013);
- Dissolved oxygen concentrations at each of the sites assessed in May 2016 are below the recommended range indicating that the lack of dissolved oxygen in the system may limit the aquatic community to some degree;
- > Data from future monitoring studies will be used to identify temporal trends;
- The temperatures observed at each of the points are deemed natural for the time of year and the nature of the systems. The observed variations can be attributed to diurnal variation between sampling times and the slight variation in the volume of water in the water bodies sampled.

Habitat integrity along this section of the Klein Marico River system:

- Based on the observations of both the October 2014 as well as the May 2016 habitat assessments, the habitat diversity and structure in terms of habitat provision for aquatic communities is deemed largely inadequate to support a diverse aquatic macroinvertebrate community under very low flow conditions. On comparison of the results of the October 2014 assessment to the results of the May 2016 assessment, it is evident that under higher flow conditions, habitat suitability is slightly improved;
- On application of the Intermediate Habitat Integrity Assessment (IHIA), for the Klein Marico River sites (DHK B3, DHK B4 and DHK B5 assessed in October 2014 and DHK B3, DHK B4 and DHKK 4 assessed in May 2016), mostly only small and moderate impacts were recorded for both instream and riparian zones habitat (Appendix 5). The DHK B5 site was not reassessed in the May 2016 assessment due to the absence of flow at this point and the results of the October 2014 assessment are thus retained;
- Large instream impacts in terms of flow and bed modifications were observed at site DHK B3 and site DHK B4. Other instream impacts at these two sites included small channel and water quality modifications and solid waste disposal. At site DHK B5,



assessed only in the October 2014 assessment, a moderate instream impact in terms of water quality was noted, with smaller impacts related to water abstraction activities, flow, bed and channel modifications, exotic fauna and solid waste disposal also evident. At site DHKK 4, assessed only in the May 2016 assessment, only very small impacts in terms of flow, bed and water quality modifications were observed;

- For instream habitat zone integrity both sites DHK B3 and DHK B4 obtained a B (largely natural) classification in October 2014 and a C (moderately modified) classification in the May 2016 assessment. Site DHK B5 obtained a class B (largely natural) classification and the DHKK 4 site obtained an A (natural) classification in the May 2016 assessment;
- The variations observed are largely related to changes in flow condition at each site between the October 2014 and May 2016 assessments and are considered unrelated to any existing impacts as a result of activities in the vicinity of the proposed mining project which include but are not limited to game farming, livestock farming, agricultural activities, water abstraction and historical mining activities in the surrounding area;
- Riparian zone impacts included indigenous vegetation removal and exotic vegetation encroachment at sites DHK B3, DHK B4 and DHK B5, with some impacts as a result of erosion observed at site DHK B4. These impacts are likely related to agricultural activities, trampling by livestock and water abstraction activities. For riparian habitat zone integrity both sites DHK B3 and DHK B4 obtained B (largely natural) classifications in both the October 2014 and the May 2016 assessments. Site DHK B5 obtained a B (largely natural) classification in October 2014 and site DHKK 4 was assigned an A (natural) classification in May 2016.
- Overall scores of 73.68% (DHK B3), 78.95% (DHK B4), 84.84% (DHK B5) and 96.88% (DHKK 4) were calculated, placing sites DHK B3 and DHK B4 in a class C (moderately modified), site DHK B5 in a class B (largely natural) and site DHKK 4 in a class A (natural) condition.

Application of the Riparian Vegetation Response Assessment Index (VEGRAI) to the Klein Marico River:

The VEGRAI is designed for qualitative assessment of the response of riparian vegetation to impacts in such a way that qualitative ratings translate into quantitative and defensible results. Results are defensible because their generation can be traced through an outlined process (a suite of rules that convert assessor estimates into ratings and converts multiple ratings into an Ecological category). The degree of vegetation related impacts differed substantially between the upper areas of the Klein Marico river segment and lower areas of the Klein Marico river segment. Vegetation associated with the lower portion of the Klein Marico River is less impacted when compared to that associated with more upstream portions. VEGRAI scores



were therefore calculated for each of these portions separately and a mean score was then calculated for the system as a whole.

LEVEL 3 ASSESSMENT					
METRIC GROUP	GROUP CALCULATED WEIGHTED CONFIDENCE		RANK	% WEIGHT	
MARGINAL	31.7	18.6	1.8	1.0	100.0
NON MARGINAL	35.8	14.8	0.0	2.0	70.0
	2.0				170.0
LEVEL 3 VEGRAI (%)	33.4				
VEGRAI EC	E				
AVERAGE CONFIDENCE	0.9				

Table 23: VEGRAI Ecological ecostatus output for the upper Klein Marico River.

 Table 24: VEGRAI Ecological ecostatus output for the lower Klein Marico River.

LEVEL 3 ASSESSMENT						
METRIC GROUP	CALCULATED WEIGHTED RATING RATING		CONFIDENCE	RANK	% WEIGHT	
MARGINAL	61.7	36.3	1.8	1.0	100.0	
NON MARGINAL	65.0	26.8	0.0	2.0	70.0	
	2.0				170.0	
LEVEL 3 VEGRAI (%)				63.0		
VEGRAI EC				С		
AVERAGE CONFIDENCE				0.9		

Portion	VEGRAI %	EC	Definition
Upper portion	33.4%	E	Seriously modified. The loss of natural habitat, biota and basic ecosystem functions is extensive
Lower portion	63%	С	Moderately modified. Loss and change of natural habitat and biota have occurred, but the basic ecosystem functions are still predominantly unchanged.
Mean	48.2%	D	Largely modified. A large loss of natural habitat, biota and basic ecosystem functions has occurred.

The overall VEGRAI score calculated for the upstream portion of the Klein Marico River falls within the EC Class E (Seriously modified) due to vegetation removal and alien vegetation encroachment. Vegetation associated with the downstream portion of the Klein Marico River falls within the EC Class C (Moderately modified) with less significant impacts encountered but water abstraction and impacts from livestock trampling and some alien vegetation encroachment were still evident.

The overall score calculated for the Klein Marico River, taking into consideration both the upper and lower portions of the river, falls within an EC Class D indicating largely modified conditions. Measures to control impacts on water loss from the system as well as vegetation removal will be important and measures to control alien vegetation encroachment will be critical.



Fish Community Assessment of the Klein Marico River:

The HCR (Habitat Cover Rating) results for the Klein Marico River sites assessed in October 2014 and the May 2016 (DHK B3, DHK B4, DHK B5 and DHKK 4) are provided below.

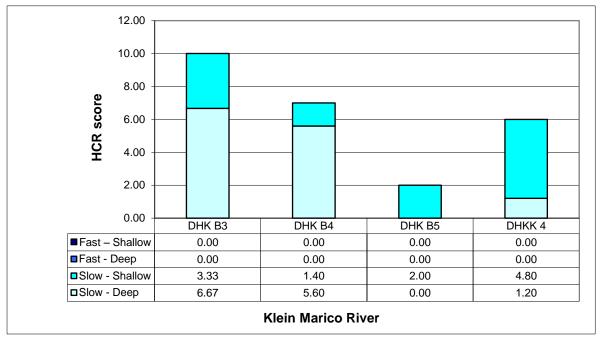


Figure 20: HCR scores for the sites assessed on the Klein Marico River considered to be representative of conditions during both the October 2014 and May 2016 site visits.

The list of fish species expected to occur has been tabulated in the materials and methods section (Appendix 4). Included in the list of expected species based on habitat availability and distribution range is the Marico barb (*Enteromius motebensis*).

The Marico barb has a very limited distribution range with very small area of occupancy. Because it is known from only approximately ten locations threatened by water abstraction for agriculture, seepage from mines via dolomitic groundwater or alien predatory fish species (*Micropterus* spp.), it has been classified as a vulnerable red data list species.

Whilst no specimens of this species were collected from assessed sites in the systems under investigation, such populations may exist on a regional scale. Various contributing factors are likely to play a role in the lack of field observations of *E. motebensis*. Very low flows observed in the May 2016 assessment as a result of severe nationwide drought conditions and the associated lack of flow connectivity are likely to have significantly affected natural migration routes and the absence is unlikely related to current impacts to water quality in the system. Both natural and manmade migratory barriers are likely to impact significantly on this species, especially in extended periods of drought. Should the Doornhoek mining project proceed, special effort should be made to ensure maintenance of habitat and ecological integrity of the



stream to limit larger scale regional impacts on potential *E. motebensis* populations. Furthermore, it is considered essential that a detailed understanding of the loss of baseflow in the Groot Marico River is obtained and that it is determined whether the proposed mining activity will allow the Ecological Reserve and environmental Water Requirements of the Klein Marico River to be met.

Fish actually collected in October 2014 and May 2016 and Frequency of Occurrence (FROC) scores employed are tabulated below along with the EC obtained using the FRAI.

 Table 26: Summary of the results (ecological categories) obtained from the application of the FRAI to the Klein Marico River.

Variable / Index	Klein Marico River
Species observed	Enteromius paludinosis
	Pseudocrenilabrus philander
	Tilapia sparrmanii
FROC score	Enteromius paludinosis (3)
	Pseudocrenilabrus philander (3)
	Tilapia sparrmanii (3)
Automated FRAI (%)	33.4
Automated EC (FRAI)	E
Refined FRAI (%)	45.9
Refined EC (FRAI)	D

EC = Ecological category

4.2.1 Aquatic Ecostatus: Summary for the Klein Marico River

The results of the various assessment indices applied during the aquatic assessment at each site were used for the determination of the overall ecostatus classification at each site. The ecostatus classification obtained at each site is indicated in the table below. Results of the May 2016 assessment were utilised for the calculations at each site, with the exception of site BHK B5, which was dry during the May 2016 assessment period and the October 2014 results were used.

Site	Integrated Ecological Category (%)	Integrated Ecostatus Category
DHK B3	45.65	D
DHKK 4	65.78	С
DHK B4	60.09	C/D
DHK B5	59.41	C/D



4.2.2 Aquatic EIS determination of the Klein Marico River

A series of determinants for EIS are assessed on a scale of 0 to 4, where 0 indicates no importance and 4 indicates very high importance. The median of the determinants is used to assign the EIS Category as listed in the table below.

Biotic Determinants	Klein Marico River
Rare and endangered biota	3
Unique biota	2
Intolerant biota	1
Species/taxon richness	2
Aquatic Habitat Determinants	
Diversity of aquatic habitat types or features	2
Refuge value of habitat type	2
Sensitivity of habitat to flow changes	2
Sensitivity of flow-related water quality changes	3
Migration route/corridor for instream and riparian biota	2
Nature Reserves, Natural Heritage sites, Natural areas, PNEs	1
RATING AVERAGE	2.0
EIS CATEGORY	Moderate/High

Table 28: Aquatic EIS determination for the Klein Marico River

Based on the findings of the assessment it is evident that aquatic features associated with the Klein Marico River have an EIS which can be considered moderate to high. The Klein Marico River system can therefore be defined as being unique on a local to national scale due to biodiversity (habitat diversity, species diversity, unique species, rare and endangered species).

4.3 The Unnamed Tributary of the Klein Marico River

The sections below present the results of the various indices applied to the sites visited during both the feasibility study (October 2014) as well as the baseline assessment (May 2016) for the aquatic ecological assessment, which were deemed suitable for biomonitoring.



Table 29: Results of the assessment at Site DHK B1 (A hot spring forming the source of a major unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River).

Site DHK B1			In situ physico	o-chemical water	quality	Aquatic macro-invertebrate community integr				
The second second				October 2014	May 2016	Invertebrate community assessment (SASS5 and IHAS)				
			рН	7.53	7.98	Parameter		October 2014	May 2016	
ALS ALL MORE			EC (mS/m)	45.3	53.0	SASS5 score	9	32	91	
			DO (mg/L) DO (% sat)	7.45	7.26	Number of ta	ха	7	18	
Sala (1) Aler				85.44 91.99				4.6	5.1	
			Temp (°C)	21.7	19.5	IHAS score		52 (Inadequate)	72 (Adequate)	
and the second se							MIRAI score 50.5		78.7	
	AND CONTRACTOR	2		emporal water qua	ality	Site specific	aquatic inver	tebrate communit	y variations	
	A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	61.	variations (%)			-	T	T	- 1	
			Parameter	% Var compare	ed to	Parameter	% of ref	% of ref	% Var May	
the sector				feasibility			ecoregion	ecoregion	2016	
All and a second second	No. Martine Drive			assessment (October 2014)			data Octobe		compared to	
				5.00		04005	2014	2016	October 2014	
AT EN LAND			pH EC (mS/m)	+5.98		SASS5	21.3	60.7 86.4	+184.4	
Eigure 21: Upstream	view of the DHK B1 site during the	May 2016 assessment	DO (% sat)	+17.0 +7.7		ASPT IHAS	78.0 NA	86.4 NA	+10.9 +38.5	
•		May 2010 assessment.	· · · ·						+30.5	
Algal proliferation	None.			ro-invertebrate sp	Decles	Key Drivers of System Change				
Depth profiles	The river consisted mostly of a shallo	by pool and isolated shallow runs	observed at this point: Atyidae, Hydracarina, Caenidae, Gomphidae			Lack of significant flow variation and diversity will largely shape the structure of the aquatic macro-invertebrate community at this point and taxa dependent on faster flow				
-p - p	in some areas.		Fish species observed:							
Flow condition	The unnamed tributary of the Klein M	larico River was flowing very	None			 conditions are likely to be largely absent; ➤ The presence of relatively sensitive species, which are 				
	slowly at this point. No fast flowing w			cies observed:						
Riparian zone	The riparian zone at the spring is inta	act but a short distance	None.					pool like habitats,		
characteristics	downstream grazing and other distur	bances along with water			indication that the water quality at this point is currently					
	abstraction have severely affected th					unlikely to limit the aquatic community present. The low flows and water abstraction from this system				
	point is affected by alien vegetation e									
	and some impacts as a result of eros					reduces	the Ecological	Importance and Se	ensitivity	
Water clarity and	Water was very clear at the time of the	ne assessment.		ssential Mitigatio		significa				
odour	No odours were evident.			ssessment no sign				e vicinity of the prop		
Significance	This site serves as a future spatial re			instream ecology v				exhibit broad varia		
	further downstream in the catchment	evident. Small impacts related to erosion in some areas as a result of poor vegetation cover, limited impacts associated with alien			community integrity on a temporal scale due to variations in flow and habitat availability. As more data is collected, better inferences on the ecological condition of the community will					
	the condition of the unnamed tributar									
	any effects as a result of the activitie									
	mining project.	May 0040	vegetation encroachment and the build-up of detritus in the system were observed.			be possible;Due to the degree of sensitivity of the systems to habitat				
SITE ECOSTATUS	October 2014	May 2016	detritus in the s	ystem were observ	leu.			stream flow, careful		
CATEGORY	Catagony E	Catagory						swill be required to		
Dickens & Graham (2001)	Category E	Category C						n Marico River, wit		
(2001) Dallas (2007)	Category D	Category D						any losses to catch		
MIRAI	Category D Category D	Category C						f the proposed Doc		
WIII V-1	Galegoly D	Calegory C				project.		and proposed Doc		



Table 30: Results of the assessment at Site DHK B2 (A point further downstream on the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River and downstream of all possible mining activities).

Site DHK B2	possible mining activities).		In situ physico	o-chemical water	quality	Aquatic macro-invertebrate community integrity				
		Parameter October 2014 May 2016			Invertebrate community assessment (SASS5 and IHAS)					
		9	рН	7.92	7.80	Parameter		October 2014	May 2016	
	Care is a with		EC (mS/m)	51.5	64.0	SASS5 score		61	47	
and here and	State On States		DO (mg/L)	8.29	6.43	Number of ta		9	12	
			DO (% sat)					6.8	3.9	
and the second second		2	Temp (°C)	17.5	13.4	IHAS score		59 (Inadequate)	46 (Inadequate)	
		6.	0.4			MIRAI score 50.5 58.8 Site specific aquatic invertebrate community varia				
THE THE		0	variations (%	emporal water qua var)	ality	Site specific	aquatic invert	ebrate communit	y variations	
The second			Parameter	% Var compare	ed to	Parameter	% of ref	% of ref	% Var May	
			feasibility			ecoregion	ecoregion	2016		
	The second second second			assessment (O	ctober 2014)		data Octobe	r data May	compared to	
							2014	2016	October 2014	
1			рН	-1.5		SASS5	40.7	31.3	-23.0	
			EC (mS/m)	+24.3		ASPT	115.3	66.1	-42.6	
-	view of the DHK B2 site during the N		DO (% sat)	-18.3		IHAS	NA	NA	-22.0	
Algal proliferation	Algal proliferation was observed in isc	plated areas at this point.		ro-invertebrate sp	becies				aity at this paint	
Depth profiles	The river consisted mostly of a shallow	w pool and very shallow runs in	observed at this point: Atyidae, Hydracarina			Lack of significant flow variation and diversity at this point largely shapes the structure of the aquatic macro-				
	some areas.		Fish species observed:			invertebrate community present with taxa dependent on				
Flow condition	The unnamed tributary of the Klein Ma	arico River was flowing very	None			faster flow conditions absent;				
	slowly at this point. No fast flowing wa		Additional species observed:			The severely reduced flow at this site in relation to the				
Riparian zone	The riparian zone along the length of		Tadpoles			upstream DHK B1 site (resulting from the weir constructed at the latter site further reducing flow) plays a significant role				
characteristics	tributary of the Klein Marico River is re									
	development of the system. The ripar	an vegetation is relatively dense					ASPT scores			
	and is dominated by woody species.							assessment, with t		
Water clarity and	Water was very clear at the time of the	e assessment.	Impacts and E	ssential Mitigatio	n :	decreasing by 48.4% and the ASPT score decreasing by 23.5% in a downstream direction;				
odour	No odours were evident.	and the upper addition of		ssessment limited						
Significance	The site is situated on the lower reach the Klein Marico River prior to the con		the instream ecology were visually evident. Some impact due to water abstraction from the system, leading to reduced instream flow and loss of refuge pools, is considered likely to be			The river systems in the vicinity of the proposed mining project are expected to exhibit broad variability in aquatic community integrity on a temporal scale due to variations in flow and habitat availability. As more data is collected, better				
	River. Future data for this point can be									
	results obtained at site DHK B1 in ord									
	aquatic ecology of the system occurrin			e impact on water					he community will	
SITE ECOSTATUS	October 2014	May 2016	also deemed p	ossible due to the a	algal growth	be poss		,	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
CATEGORY				e system and some	impact from	Due to t	he degree of se	nsitivity of the syst		
Dickens & Graham	Category D	Category E	livestock watering was observed.				tream flow, carefu			
(2001)									limit the impact on	
Dallas (2007)	Category A	Category E/F							h special mention	
MIRAI	Category D	Category D				of the need to mitigate any losses to catchment yield as a result of the activities of the proposed Doornhoek mining				
							the activities of	the proposed Doc	ornhoek mining	
						project.				



Key observations relating to water quality along this section of the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River system:

(Please note that temporal comparisons in the discussion that follows refers to comparisons between the October 2014 and May 2016 assessments).

- Conductivity values were similar to that recorded from the Klein Marico River assessment sites;
- Concentration of dissolved salts remained fairly constant but were slightly higher at the downstream (DHK B2) site;
- Conductivity increased by 20.8% between sites DHK B1 and DHK B2;
- Very slow and shallow conditions predominated at both sites. Changes in conductivity may have been influenced by slight differences in evaporation rate and river make up, geological effects and agricultural activities in the form of agricultural return flows, abstraction and watering of cattle;
- The water quality guideline for aquatic ecosystems (DWA 1997) states that: 1) Total dissolved salts (TDS) concentrations (i.e. as indicated by the EC measurements) should not be changed by > 15 % from the normal cycles of the water body under unimpacted conditions at any time of the year; and 2) the amplitude and frequency of natural cycles in TDS concentrations should not be changed;
- When viewing upstream site DHK B1 as a reference site, the spatial change in a downstream direction thus exceeds the guideline recommendation. This serves as an indication that before any impacts related to the proposed mining project, some salinisation of the system is deemed likely in the local area due to natural variations in the flow conditions and rates and the various agricultural activities taking place in the area;
- > The pH at both points can be considered neutral and is unlikely to affect aquatic biota;
- Dissolved oxygen concentration at the upstream DHK B1 assessment site was in compliance with the recommended range and the system is therefore expected to support a diverse and sensitive aquatic community, unless habitat conditions constrain the ecology of the system;
- The temperatures observed at each of the points are deemed natural for the time of year and the nature of the systems. The observed variations can be attributed to diurnal variation between sampling times and the slight variation in the volume of water in the water bodies sampled.



Habitat integrity along this section of the Unnamed Tributary of the Klein Marico River system:

- In the May 2016 assessment, the habitat diversity and structure at the DHK B1 site may be regarded as adequate to support a diverse aquatic macro-invertebrate community under the current low flow conditions, while at site DHK B2, habitat conditions may be regarded as unsuitable for supporting a diverse and sensitive aquatic community due largely to constraints in the availability of adequate flow at this point;
- On application of the IHIA to the two sites on the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River, small to critical impacts were recorded for instream zone habitat whilst small to serious impacts were reported for riparian zones habitat (Appendix 5);
- For site DHK B1, the instream zone habitat integrity assessment revealed critical impacts on water abstraction and flow modification, while for site DHK B2, with reference to the same two variables, serious and moderate impacts were respectively recorded. In addition, at site DHK B1, a large impact as a result of channel modification was observed, while a moderate impact was reported for site DHK B2 for the same variable. Both sites DHK B1 and DHK B2 presented with moderate impacts on bed modification and small impacts on solid waste disposal. Other moderate impacts include exotic fauna at site DHK B2 and inundation at site DHK B1. For instream zone habitat integrity site DHK B1 achieved a score of 25.5% (Class E, extensive loss) whilst site DHK B2 achieved 40.9% (Class D, largely modified);
- In terms of impacts to the riparian zone, the most significant impact at site DHK B1 was alien encroachment, while at site DHK B2 only a moderate impact was recorded for the same variable. Both sites presented with large impacts related to vegetation removal and moderate impacts from water abstraction, flow modification and channel modification. Small impacts associated with inundation at site DHK B1 were noted. A moderate impact as a result of bank erosion was recorded for site DHK B2. In lieu of these observations, for riparian zone habitat integrity site DHK B1 achieved a score of 71.6% (Class C, moderately modified) whilst site DHK B2 achieved 45.9% (Class D, largely modified);
- An overall score of 48.5% was calculated for DHK B1 and 43.3% for DHK B2, resulting in both being classified as Class D (Largely modified) sites.

Application of the Riparian Vegetation Response Assessment Index (VEGRAI) to the Unnamed Tributary of the Klein Marico River:

The VEGRAI ecostatus tool for this unnamed tributary yielded a VEGRAI score of 68.7% indicating moderately modified Class B conditions. The levels of integrity of the marginal and



non-marginal zones were largely similar. The most significant impacts on the system occur from alien vegetation encroachment and vegetation removal. Some stress on the marginal zone from water abstraction is, however, also evident.

LEVEL 3 ASSESSMENT					
METRIC GROUP	METRIC GROUP CALCULATED WEIGHTED CONFI		CONFIDENCE	RANK	% WEIGHT
MARGINAL	68.3	40.2	1.8	1.0	100.0
NON MARGINAL	69.2	28.5	0.0	2.0	70.0
	2.0				170.0
LEVEL 3 VEGRAI (%)				68.7	
VEGRAI EC				С	
AVERAGE CONFIDENCE				0.9]

Fish Community Assessment of the Klein Marico River:

The HCR (Habitat Cover Rating) results for the sites on the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River assessed in October 2014 and the May 2016 (DHK B1 and DHK B2) are provided below

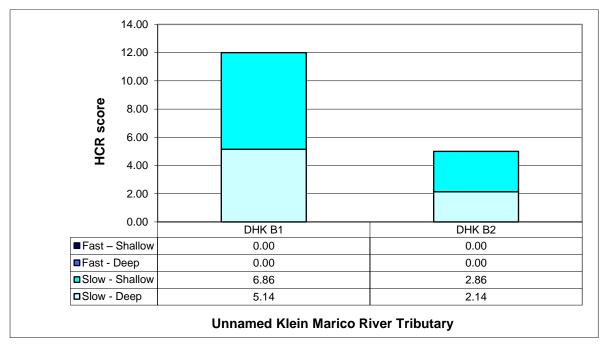


Figure 23: HCR scores for the two sites assessed on the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River in October 2014 and May 2016.

The list of fish species expected to occur has been tabulated in the materials and methods section. Fish actually collected in October 2014 and May 2016 and Frequency of Occurrence (FROC) scores employed are tabulated below. In addition, the table summarises the EC obtained using the FRAI.



River assessed	Unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico
Species observed	Tilapia sparrmanii
FROC score	3
Automated FRAI (%)	18.3

E/F

39.8

D/E

Table 32: Summary of the results (ecological categories) obtained from the application of theFRAI to the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River.

EC = Ecological category

Automated EC (FRAI)

Refined FRAI (%)

Refined EC (FRAI)

From the table above it is clear that the EC calculated for the FRAI largely corresponds to that obtained for the MIRAI applied to this section of the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River. This could be expected as both fish populations as well as aquatic macro-invertebrate species are subject to and influenced by the same ecological drivers. Impacts on stream flow and stream connectivity are considered to be major contributors to the drivers of change in this system.

4.3.1 Aquatic Ecostatus: Summary for the Klein Marico River

The results of the various assessment indices applied during the aquatic assessment at each site were used for the determination of the overall ecostatus classification at each site. The ecostatus classification obtained at each site is indicated in the table below. Results of the May 2016 assessment were applied for the calculations at each site, with the exception of site BHK B5, which was dry during the May 2016 assessment period and the October 2014 results were used.

Site	Integrated Ecological Category (%)	Integrated Ecostatus Category
DHK B1	66.76	С
DHK B2	59.64	C/D

Table 33: Summary	y of the results of the Inte	grated Ecological Cat	enory for each site
Table 55. Summar	y of the results of the line	grateu Leological Cat	egoly for each site.



4.3.2 Aquatic EIS determination

A series of determinants for EIS are assessed on a scale of 0 to 4, where 0 indicates no importance and 4 indicates very high importance. The median of the determinants is used to assign the EIS Category as listed in the table below.

Biotic Determinants	Unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River
Rare and endangered biota	3
Unique biota	2
Intolerant biota	1
Species/taxon richness	2
Aquatic Habitat Determinants	
Diversity of aquatic habitat types or features	2
Refuge value of habitat type	2
Sensitivity of habitat to flow changes	2
Sensitivity of flow-related water quality changes	3
Migration route/corridor for instream and riparian biota	1
Nature Reserves, Natural Heritage sites, Natural areas, PNEs	1
RATING AVERAGE	1.9
EIS CATEGORY	Moderate

Table 34: Aquatic EIS	determination for th	e unnamed tributarv	Klein Marico River
Tuble off. / qualle Ele		io annanioa insatary	

Based on the findings of the assessment it is evident that aquatic features associated with the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River have an EIS which can be considered moderate. As could be expected this is similar to the classification obtained for the Klein Marico River itself. The Klein Marico River system can therefore be defined as being unique on a provincial or local scale due to biodiversity (habitat diversity, species diversity, unique species, rare and endangered species).



4.4 Aquatic assessment results synopsis and conclusion

4.4.1 Literature search and comparison with aquatic EIS determination

The table below summarises the EC, PES, EI and ES results reported in cited literature

Table 35: Summary of ecological status of the study area as gleaned from literature

Source	Default EC	PES	El	ES
DWS RQIS PES/EIS	С	В	Moderate	Moderate
DWA report 1,3/00/CON/CLA/0312	Not stated	С	Low	Low
State of rivers report 9	Overall ecostatus sta	ated as "Fair"		

The aquatic EIS assessment performed is in agreement with literature cited. Aquatic features associated with the Klein Marico River system were found to have an EIS which can be considered "moderate" to "low".

Based on the DWS RQIS database desktop result and current EIS assessments, the Klein Marico River system can therefore be defined as being unique on a provincial or local scale due to biodiversity and often has substantial capacity for use.

4.4.2 Sites of interest only visually assessed

Sites on the Klein Marico River that were only visually assessed were affected by the following impacts: Upstream mining and agricultural activities, with specific reference to abstraction and livestock grazing and alien vegetation encroachment.

4.4.3 Aquatic assessment results for the Klein Marico River and the unnamed tributary

Table 36 on the next page summarizes the results obtained for the respective sites assessed.

Based on the findings of the aquatic study, both the unnamed tributary and Klein Marico River can be considered water stressed systems with moderate ecological importance and sensitivity.

Although not collected from the sites assessed, Marico barbs (*E. motebensis*) may potentially occur within the larger regional area based on known distribution. This species is a vulnerable red data list species and care should be taken to avoid larger scale impacts within the system.



Index		Unnamed tri Klein Mar		Klein Marico River			
IIIGEX		DHK B1	DHK B2	DHK B3	DHK B4	DHK B5	DHKK 4
IHIA	October 2014	D	D	В	В	С	NA*
	May 2016	D	D	С	С	NA*	А
IHAS	October 2014	Inadequate	Inadequate	Borderline adequate	Inadequate	Inadequate	NA*
	May 2016	Adequate	Inadequate	Inadequate	Inadequate	NA*	Inadequate
VEGRAI	October 2014	В		E			
	May 2016	В		E			
SASS5 Dickens	October 2014	E	D	D	D	D	NA*
and Graham (2001)	May 2016	С	Е	D	D	NA*	D
SASS5 Dallas	October 2014	D	А	D	С	D	NA*
(2007)	May 2016	D	E/F	D	D	NA*	D
MIRAI	October 2014	D	D	С	С	С	NA*
	May 2016	С	D	D	С	NA*	С
FRAI	October 2014	F		F			
automated	May 2016	E/F		E			
FRAI	October 2014	D/E		D/E			
refined	May 2016	D/E		D			
Integrated Ecological Category		С	C/D	D	C/D	C/D	С

Table 36: Summary of aqua	atic assessment results
---------------------------	-------------------------

*Not Assessed

The overall PES for the Klein Marico River, which occurs in the vicinity of the proposed Doornhoek mining project, appears to improve in a downstream direction and fall into largely to moderately modified conditions (Class D to Class C). The overall PES of the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico Tributary decreases slightly in a downstream direction, but may also be classified as largely to moderately modified from natural conditions (Class D to Class C). The overall Integrated Ecological Category for these two systems thus fall within the Desired Ecological Management Class (according to the DWS RQS PES/EIS database) for a stream of this nature in the Klein Marico River Catchment.



5 IMPACT ASSESSMENT

In addition to the various localities earmarked for mining within the mining rights area, four possible infrastructure layout options (Figures 24 - 27) are under consideration for the proposed Doornhoek mining project. Table 37 provides a summary of the footprint structures envisioned for the proposed Doornhoek mining project.

Description	F	Footprint (m)		
Description	Length	Width	Height	
Water Services	53,7	26,2	6	
Primary Crushing Area	21	16	20	
Security Gate House	20	16	4	
Secondary Crushing	10	9	16	
Site Establishment	62,3	11,3	3,5	
Sub Station	26,1	7,2	6,6	
Laboratory	20,45	37,75	7,15	
Fuel Storage	9,22	4,5	3,5	
Conditioning Plant	66	27,5	3,4	
Change House Plan	25	25	4,6	
Air Plant	20	16	4	
Blower Plant	18,5	6,5	6,7	
Tailing Dam				
Mill Building	46,7	52,5	28	
Plant Ablution	8,3	3,4	3,9	
Re-agent Plant	13,8	5,8	6	
Tertiary Crushing Plant	22,1	11.5	27	
Sewer Treatment Plant	46,3	25,7	3,5	
Water Treatment Plant	33,5	11,9	5	

Table 37: Summary of the footprint structures associated with the proposed Doornhoek mining project

Depending on the final layout chosen, the proposed Doornhoek mining project may result in a direct impact to the aquatic resources present in this area should mitigation not take place to avoid this and minimise the impacts, with special mention of Layout Option 2, which is located within a drainage line associated with the upper reaches of the Klein Marico River.

These impacts are likely to, in turn, result in the loss of recharge to the downstream portions of the Klein Marico River and in turn to the Groot Marico River further along in the catchment. Assessments indicate that flow variability is a major ecological driver in the system and loss of recharge will have a significant effect on aquatic community ecological integrity. Smaller systems are often less robust and affected to a greater degree by flow variability, compared to larger, more resilient systems. As such the Klein Marico River and to an even greater extent



the related tributaries may be greatly affected by changes in flow, as also reflected in the EIS assessments.

Careful management of edge effects as well as careful management of the dirty water seepage related to any proposed infrastructure is thus deemed essential to maintaining habitat integrity and water quality integrity of the aquatic resources in the vicinity of the study area.

Mitigation of seepage to the groundwater aquifers present is of specific concern as contamination of the groundwater resources is likely to affect habitat condition locally, as well as affect habitat and water quality integrity of the aquatic resources further downstream on a regional scale. In addition, the groundwater resources of these areas are valuable for water input to various aquifers and springs both locally and regionally.

Open cast mining activities are likely to result in an ever increasing cone of depression as a result of dewatering activities over the life of the proposed Doornhoek mining project, which is likely to negatively affect the groundwater resources present as well as affect surface water recharge. It is deemed essential that a clear understanding be obtained of the degree of loss of base flow that will occur as a result of the proposed mining activity and in turn how this will impact on the EWR of the Klein Marico River. Furthermore, decant of dirty water in the open cast pits will need to be carefully controlled and dirty water appropriately managed and treated in all phases of the proposed mining project.



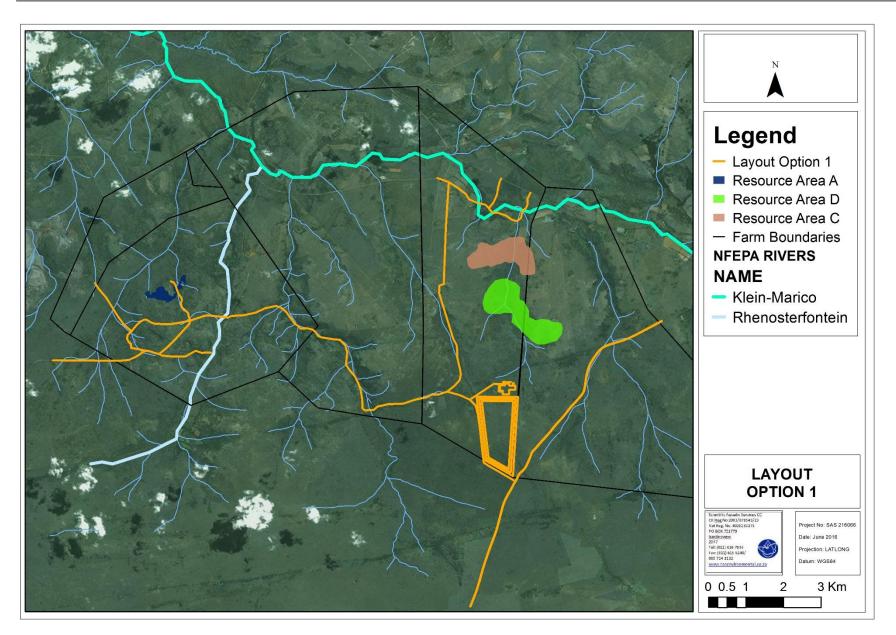


Figure 24: Footprint layout, Option 1.



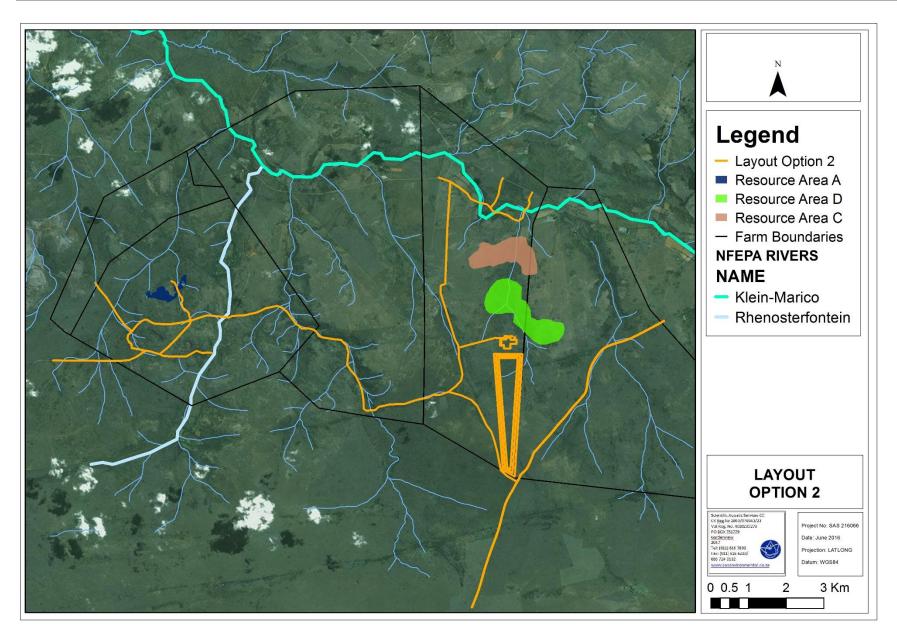


Figure 25: Footprint layout, Option 2.



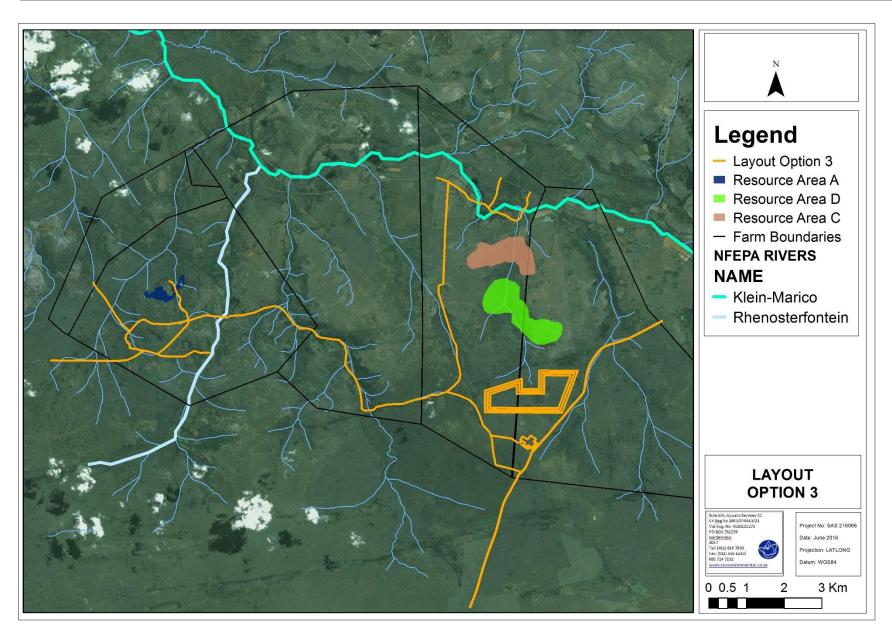


Figure 26: Footprint layout, Option 3.



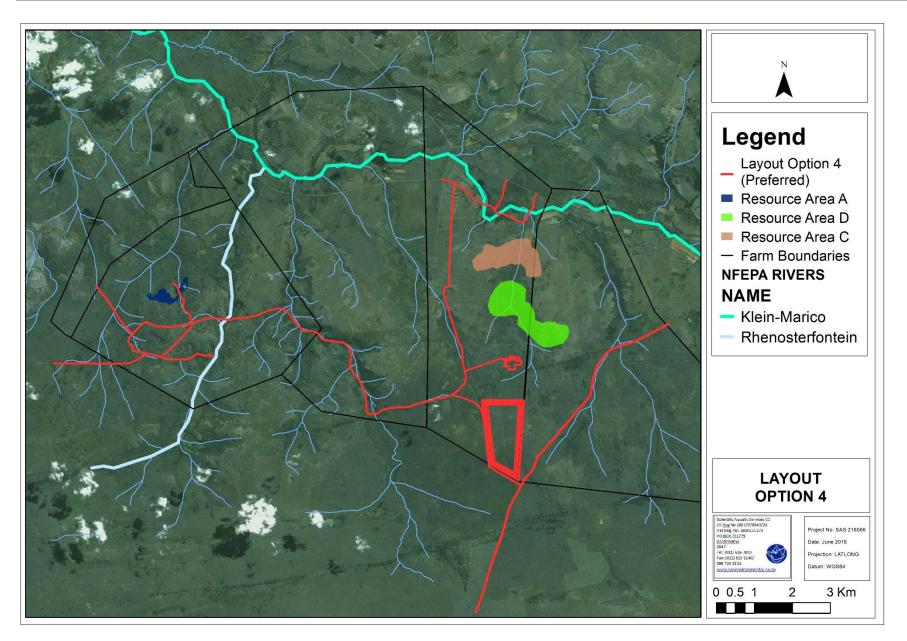


Figure 27: Footprint layout, Option 4.



5.1 Impact Analysis

Prior to any potential impacts from mining, the systems present are already under considerable threat from the following:

- Reduced in-stream flow, loss of base, stream connectivity and catchment yield which in turn will affect the EWR and the Ecostatus of the system;
- Impacts from cattle watering and agricultural return flows;
- Deteriorating water quality with specific reference to salinization and decreased oxygen levels resulting from the impacts mentioned above;
- > Alien vegetation encroachment;
- Erosion; and
- > Sedimentation.

It is deemed essential that all effort is made to ensure that impacts on the Klein Marico River and tributaries as a result of the proposed mining project are minimised. Specific mention is made of mining activities that will affect in-stream flow and stream connectivity, negative impacts on water quality, erosion and sedimentation. In addition, impacts from alien vegetation encroachment in the catchment may also occur.

The impact assessment was undertaken on all aspects of the aquatic ecology deemed likely to be affected by the proposed Doornhoek Mining Project. The sections below present the results of the findings per identified risk/ impact for the instream and riparian zones of the mining rights area.

Below potential impacts and recommendations for impact mitigation are discussed. Note that the estimation of the severity of impacts are included in Appendix 8.

IMPACT 1: LOSS OF INSTREAM FLOW

Impacts on reduced instream flow in terms of loss of instream surface and base flow will in turn affect aquatic refugia and loss of flow dependant taxa, along with a deterioration in water quality. These changes may mean that the Ecological reserve and the Environmental Water Requirements (EWR) for the Klein Marco River may not be achieved

Factors which may play a role include:

Change in surface coverage. Development of the mining rights area will change the surface coverage in some areas from vegetated soil to buildings, hardened gravel roads, paved areas (parking) and compacted earth. Furthermore, the operational area



of the mine will be defined as a "dirty water area" which will be separated from the clean water area. This dirty water area will then be lost to the environment reducing the catchment yield of the Klein Marico River.

- Inadequate separation and management of clean and dirty water may lead to unnatural instream flow changes, which may affect the flow characteristics and ultimately lead to loss of catchment yield;
- Capture of run-off and capture of rainfall (inundation) in the 'dirty'/impacted areas would lower instream flow in the receiving environment;
- Closely related to inundation is the canalisation of run-off in other areas. Intercepting run-off around mining activities and infrastructure could reduce the amount of time that water would take to reach the Klein Marico River and its associated tributaries and may lead to "flash flood" events on varying scales. This is likely to occur due to:
 - the decreased friction on the water associated with concentrated flow in a concretelined canal, as opposed to sheet flow on hill slopes;
 - the consequently lower flow velocities;
- Disturbance of soils due to the construction, operational and decommissioning activities of the proposed Doornhoek mining project may result in erosion and sedimentation of the aquatic resources present, which in turn will result in a loss of instream flow.

The above factors are likely to lead to altered riverine recharge flood peaks and a general loss of runoff volumes successfully reaching the Klein Marico River system and its associated tributaries. This in turn may lead to the loss of aquatic biota such as fish and aquatic macro-invertebrates which rely on the presence of surface water. Loss of aquatic habitats and refugia for aquatic macro-invertebrates and fish, as well as increased moisture stress on riparian vegetation is considered possible as a result of the proposed mining project. Fish such as the Marico barb (*E. motebensis*), which are a red data species with a known distribution in the greater area may be negatively affected should adequate surface water recharge of these rivers be negatively affected as a result of the activities of the proposed Doornhoek mining project. The proposed activities may result in a loss of streamflow regulation and the proposed Doornhoek mining project may negatively affect existing flow rates and result in unnatural peak flows further downstream of the mining rights area.

Specific Mitigatory measures for loss of instream flow include the following:

It is deemed important that a desktop reserve model be run on the Klein Marico river at a point a short distance downstream of the proposed mining operations in order to define the EWR. This will allow site specific instream flow and water quality



requirements to be determined which in turn will allow for improved planning and decision making to ensure that reserve requirements on a local scale can be met.

- Ensure that as far as possible all infrastructures are placed outside of drainage and river areas. In particular, mention is made of the need to not encroach on the riparian systems near the Klein Marico River and its associated tributaries with a minimum buffer of 100m around all riparian systems maintained in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National Water Act. Layout option 2 (Figure 25) is thus strongly discouraged from an aquatic health perspective;
- > Ensure that sound environmental management is in place during the planning phase;
- Dirty water dams should be off stream and tributary structures and not within the natural drainage system of the area, thereby minimising impacts loss of instream flow and downstream recharge, as well as minimising impacts from inundation and siltation;
- Minimise loss of aquatic features where possible through planning and suitable layouts;
- Limit the footprint area of the construction activity to what is absolutely essential in order to minimise the loss of clean water runoff areas and the concomitant recharge of streams in the area;
- If it is absolutely unavoidable that either the Klein Marico River or its associated tributaries will be affected, disturbance must be minimised and suitably rehabilitated;
- Ensure that no incision and canalisation of the aquatic resources present takes place as a result of site clearing and construction or operational activities as well as decommissioning activities;
- All erosion noted within the study area should be remedied immediately and included as part of the ongoing rehabilitation plan;
- During the construction and operational phases of the proposed Doornhoek mining project, erosion berms should be installed on roadways to prevent gully formation and siltation of the aquatic resources. The following points should serve to guide the placement of erosion berms:
 - Where the track has slope of less than 2%, berms every 50m should be installed;
 - Where the track slopes between 2% and 10%, berms every 25m should be installed;
 - Where the track slopes between 10%-15%, berms every 20m should be installed;
 - Where the track has slope greater than 15%, berms every 10m should be installed.
- Ensure that all stockpiles are well managed and have measures such as berms and hessian sheets implemented to prevent erosion and sedimentation which may ultimately lead to transformation of aquatic habitat areas;



- All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling outside of development footprint areas should be ripped and profiled;
- A suitable alien-vegetation control programme must be put in place so as to prevent further encroachment as a result of disturbance to the surrounding terrestrial zones;
- As much vegetation growth as possible should be promoted within the proposed development area during all phases in order to protect soils and vegetation clearance should be kept to a minimum as the biomass in the area is not very high and so therefore plants will not grow quickly;
- No use of clean surface water or any groundwater which potentially recharges the watercourses in the area should take place. In this regard specific mention is made of any water use which will affect the instream flow in the Klein Marico River and the associated tributaries;
- Very strict control of water consumption must take place and detailed monitoring must take place where all water usage must continuously be optimised;
- Upstream dewatering boreholes should be considered to minimise the creation of dirty water and this clean water should be used to recharge the natural systems downstream of the mining rights areas;
- > Permit only essential construction personnel within 100m of all riparian systems;
- All areas of increased ecological sensitivity should be designated as No-Go areas and be off limits to all unauthorised vehicles and personnel during all phases of the proposed Doornhoek mining project;
- No crossing of the aquatic resources should take place and the substrate conditions of the aquatic resources and stream connectivity must be maintained;
- Restrict construction to the drier winter months to avoid sedimentation of the aquatic resources in the vicinity of the proposed Doornhoek mining project;
- No material may be dumped or stockpiled within any rivers, tributaries or drainage lines in the vicinity of the proposed Doornhoek mining project.

IMPACT 2: IMPACTS ON WATER QUALITY

If all constituents in the cumulative decant or seepage from the proposed Doornhoek mining project are within the applicable target water quality ranges (DWAF, 1996), then the activities will not contribute significantly to an unacceptable cumulative impact. Thus, a conservative approach is to be taken (the Precautionary Principle should be applied), in this case to account for possible discharge of pollutants by future activities in the river catchment as well as to ensure that as far as possible all possible seepage or risk of seepage is suitably mitigated and prevented as far as possible.



The Klein Marico River and its associated tributaries occur in a severely water stressed area and are fed largely through an extensive system of underground aquifers and springs, which as described in Section 3.1.2 for the Quaternary Catchment of concern (A31D), have been assigned a Water Resource Category: Good and a Class B PES category (DWA, 2012). It is thus considered critical that any activities which may result in any alterations to groundwater quality as well any surface water associated with surface water recharge of the Klein Marico River and its associated tributaries receive adequate attention when considering impacts on reduced water quality and the impact it may have on the aquatic community. Close monitoring of any spatial or temporal trends is advised.

Increased sediment load

Increased erosion of disturbed surfaces means that the run-off contains a higher silt or sediment load which may be discharged into the Klein Marico River and its associated tributaries and drainage lines. As a result of the current natural state of the mining rights area, the vegetation cover causes friction to rainfall run-off. This reduces flow velocities and consequently shear forces between the water and the ground surface, resulting in the ground surface remaining intact and not being eroded away. If for any reason the ground surface is disturbed and the flow velocities are increased, then there is potential for increased erosion to occur. Increased sediment load contains suspended solids. If there are too many suspended solids in the water this can negatively affect biological life.

The following activities are likely to cause an increase in movement of sediment loads, or directly increase erosion:

- Canalisation of run-off would potentially lead to the creation of super critical flows which would lead to erosion and incision of drainage lines affected. Furthermore, the mobilised sediment would lead to sedimentation in the receiving environment which in turn would affect habitat integrity and aquatic biota.
- > Stripping (vegetation clearance) of mining areas prior to excavation of stockpile areas;
- Construction of hard-standing areas that increase run-off volumes, including roads, buildings and paved areas; and
- > Construction activities that loosen the ground surface.

Impaired water quality due to pollutants, with special mention of Fluorides, discharged from processing plant and treated ore

Wastewater from the process may contain pollutants in excess of the target water quality ranges for the water uses of the receiving water body. Any spills/leakages of wastewater would



thus impact negatively on the surface water quality. A further consideration is the run-off of pollutants from the process plant area following rainfall, due to the activities within that area.

Groundwater concentrations of Fluoride in the vicinity of the proposed Doornhoek Fluorspar mine are significantly elevated from those recorded in the surface water resources present, specifically the Groot Marico and the Klein Marico Rivers and their associated tributaries. The proposed mining activities have the potential to result in both increases or decreases in these concentrations as a result of changes to the water chemistry with specific mention of changes in pH, contact with air and contact with additional suspended solids and other exposed minerals. Should this water come into contact with the receiving surface water resources, a toxicological impact could be expressed on the aquatic life present if dissolved salt concentrations and concentrations of specific constituents differ significantly.

Impaired water quality due to pollutants in run-off from stockpiles

It is likely that run-off from the stockpiles will have a different chemical composition to natural run-off. In this event, it is best practice to keep 'dirty' water from stockpile run-off separate from 'clean' water from natural run-off.

Impaired water quality due to petrochemical spills

Fuel or oil spills from vehicles could contaminate surface water resources. Leakages, spills or run-off from vehicle wash bays, workshop facilities, fuel depots or storage facilities of potentially polluting substances could contaminate surface water resources.

Impaired water quality due to pollutants in water released from mining areas

Overflow of water (decant), whether surface or ground, from the mining areas could release pollutants to the surface water environment if geochemical testing indicates any water quality issue such as salinization, with special mention of increased concentrations of fluorides or fluorite salts reaching the surface water resources.

Seepage emanating from the ore stockpiles and the tailings dam facility:

Seepage of dirty water from the proposed tailings storage facility as well as seepage from the ore stockpiles and storage dumps are likely to contaminate the groundwater resources in the vicinity of the proposed Doornhoek mining project. The groundwater resources in this area are extensive and such an impact is thus likely to have severe impacts on the water quality both locally as well as on a regional scale.



Spills or leaks associated with faulty infrastructure:

Dirty water emanating from the proposed mining process is likely to reach the receiving environment as a result of surface water runoff or seepage to the groundwater resources as a result of spills or leaks associated with mining infrastructure. Potential inadequate management of dirty water is likely to have severe impacts on the water quality of the aquatic resources present, both locally as well as on a regional scale.

Decant associated with open cast pits:

Potential inadequate closure and rehabilitation leading to ongoing pollution from contaminating sources such as overburden dumps and latent dirty water areas may impact on water quality, with special mention of contaminated dirty water decant generated from in-filled opencast pits. Decant resulting from dirty water in the open cast pits will need to be carefully controlled and dirty water appropriately managed and treated in all phases of the proposed mining project.

The following aspects of instream water quality could be affected:

- > Impacts on riparian vegetation structures due to impaired water quality;
- Build-up of contaminants in sediments leading to the creation of a sediment sink and chronic source of potential water contamination;
- Latent release of contaminants in sediments leading to the formation of an ongoing source of potential water contamination; and
- > Impacts on groundwater quality, which could manifest in surface water sources.

Specific mitigations for impact to water quality include the following:

- Ensure that as far as possible all infrastructures are placed outside of drainage and river areas. In particular, mention is made of the need to not encroach on the aquatic resources in the vicinity of the Klein Marico River with a minimum buffer of 100m around all aquatic resources maintained in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National Water Act;
- > Permit only essential construction personnel within 100m of all riparian systems;
- Keep all demarcated sensitive zones outside of the construction area off limits during the construction phase of the development;
- Limit the footprint area of the construction activity to what is absolutely essential in order to minimise the loss of clean water runoff areas and the concomitant recharge of streams in the area;



- Design of infrastructure should be environmentally and structurally sound and all possible precautions taken to prevent spillage or seepage to the groundwater resources present;
- Any dirty water facilities should be lined with an HDPE liner or drainage barrier system (as required) to prevent seepage;
- Clear separation of clean and dirty water must take place and diversion of clean water around future operational areas (if applicable) must ensure minimisation of the loss of catchment yield;
- Clean and dirty water separation systems should be the first systems developed on site;
- Very clear and well managed clean and dirty water separation must take place in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National Water Act;
- Prevent run-off from dirty water areas entering stream systems through ensuring clear separation of clean and dirty water areas;
- Dirty water dams must be adequately designed to contain a 1:50 24 hour storm water event;
- All dirty water facilities must be managed in such a way as to ensure that storage and surge capacity is available if a rainfall event occurs;
- > It must be ensured that the design and construction of all infrastructure prevents failure;
- > Infrastructure must be monitored for seepages and erosion;
- Dirty water dams should be off stream structures and not within the natural drainage system of the area, thereby minimising impacts to water quality and loss or transformation of aquatic habitat;
- Ensure that the mine process water system is managed in such a way as to prevent discharge to the receiving environment and to prevent discharge of dirty water;
- > Dirty water must be recycled back into the mining system;
- Upstream dewatering boreholes should be considered to minimise the creation of dirty water and this clean water should be used to recharge the natural systems downstream of the mining rights areas;
- Ensure that all stockpiles are well managed and have measures such as berms and hessian sheets implemented to prevent erosion and sedimentation which may ultimately lead to impaired water quality and in turn, transformation of aquatic habitat areas;
- Implement measures to contain seepage as far as possible to prevent contamination of the groundwater regime. If necessary, treated ore stockpile areas should be lined with an HDPE liner or drainage barrier system (as required) to prevent seepage to the groundwater resources;



- > All vehicles must be regularly inspected for leaks;
- Re-fuelling must take place on a sealed surface area to prevent ingress of hydrocarbons into topsoil;
- It must be ensured that all hazardous storage containers and storage areas comply with the relevant SABS standards to prevent leakage;
- > All hazardous chemicals must be stored on specified surfaces;
- > All spills should be immediately cleaned up and treated accordingly;
- Appropriate sanitary facilities must be provided for the duration of the construction activities and all waste must be removed to an appropriate waste facility;
- No dumping of waste should take place. If any spills occur, they should be immediately cleaned up;
- Monitor all systems for erosion and incision;
- Close monitoring of water quality (surface water, groundwater and process water) must take place. Monitoring of water quality should take place at a minimum frequency of once a month (when surface water is present) during which time major salts and basic metals, are monitored along with basic parameters such as pH, Total Suspended Solids (TSS) and Total Dissolved Solids (TDS), dissolved oxygen and Electrical Conductivity (EC). Specific mention is made of the need to monitor concentrations of fluoride in the groundwater resources;
- Should fluoride concentrations reach an undesirable level, suitable mitigation measures should be implemented such as flocculation/precipitation with calcite (crushed limestone);
- Precipitate should be prevented from reaching the aquatic resources through a suitable filtration, or another appropriate removal process so as to prevent sedimentation of the surface water resources present as well as alterations to water clarity and water chemistry;
- Ongoing aquatic ecological monitoring must take place on a bi-annual basis by an SA RHP Accredited assessor in order to identify any emerging issues in the receiving environment;
- A baseline toxicological assessment of the groundwater and surface water resources should take place before commencing with the proposed Doornhoek mining project. Toxicity testing of the proposed Doornhoek mining project's process water facilities, the groundwater and surface water resources present should take place quarterly and concurrently with the biomonitoring program in order to monitor the toxicological risk of the process water system to the receiving environment and in particular the groundwater resources. These ongoing toxicological tests should be compared to



baseline data to monitor and manage any emerging impacts over time. Tests should include the following test organisms as a minimum:

- Vibrio fischeri;
- Daphnia pulex; and
- Algal Growth Potential;
- The groundwater pollution plume should be modeled and appropriately monitored. Any impacts to the groundwater resources in the vicinity of the proposed Doornhoek mining project will need to be suitably and timeously mitigated to prevent impacts further downstream and potentially on a regional scale;
- The proposed Doornhoek mining project must be managed as a zero discharge facility, however definitive toxicological testing according to the Direct Estimation of Ecological Effect Potential (DEEEP) protocol should take place should it become evident that process water discharge or decant of groundwater will occur in order to define safe discharge volumes and ensure sufficient dilution.

IMPACT 3: LOSS OF AQUATIC HABITAT

Habitat transformation and destruction is the alteration of a natural habitat to the point that it is rendered unfit to support species dependent upon it as their home territory. Loss or transformation of habitat may cause a reduction of biodiversity, due to organisms previously using the area being displaced or destroyed. Riverine systems and particularly temporary riverine systems or river systems that have very low flows as part of their annual hydrological cycles are particularly susceptible to changes in habitat condition. The proposed mining activity of the proposed Doornhoek mining project has the potential to lead to habitat loss and/or alteration of the aquatic and riparian resources on the mining rights area.

Factors which could potentially lead to an impact include:

- Potentially poor planning leading to the placement of infrastructure within nonperennial drainage lines, with special mention of the overburden stockpile areas as well as roads, road crossings and bridges all may alter the aquatic habitat;
- Potentially inadequate design of infrastructure leading to changes to instream habitat and changes to system hydrology, which may alter the aquatic habitat;
- Potentially inadequate separation of clean and dirty water areas and the prevention of the release of sediment rich water may alter the aquatic habitat within the receiving environment;



- Site clearing and the removal of vegetation, as well as road construction and the disturbance of soils, may lead to increased runoff and erosion, which may alter the aquatic habitat;
- Earthworks in the vicinity of drainage systems leading to increased runoff and erosion and altered runoff patterns may alter the aquatic habitat;
- Open cast mining activities may lead to a cone of depression as a result of dewatering activities, which may result in a lowering of the groundwater table and a loss of surface water recharge to the surface water systems present;
- Construction of bridge crossings altering streamflow patterns and water velocities may alter the aquatic habitat;
- > Alien vegetation encroachment will impact on and alter the aquatic habitat;
- > Inadequate separation of clean and dirty water areas may alter the aquatic habitat;
- Mining related activities leading to increased disturbance of soils and drainage lines, which may alter the aquatic habitat;
- Any activities which lead to the reduction of flow in the systems and the use of surface and groundwater sources for production water may alter the aquatic habitat; and
- Ongoing pollution from inappropriately decommissioned structures may result in alterations to the aquatic habitat.

Aspects of instream habitat that is likely to be affected include the following:

- Erosion and incision of the riparian zone;
- > Altered wetting patterns leading to impacts on riparian zone continuity;
- Loss of low flow refugia;
- > Altered substrate conditions from sandy conditions to more muddy conditions;
- > Altered depth and flow regimes in the major drainage systems; and
- > Alien vegetation proliferation.

Specific mitigation measures for impacts to aquatic habitat include the following:

- Ensure that as far as possible all infrastructures are placed outside of drainage and river areas. In particular, mention is made of the need to not encroach on the riparian systems near the Klein Marico River and its associated tributaries with a minimum buffer of 100m around all aquatic resources maintained in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National Water Act;
- > Permit only essential construction personnel within 100m of all riparian systems;
- Keep all demarcated sensitive zones outside of the construction area off limits during the construction phase of the development;



- Implement alien vegetation control program within the riparian zones with special mention of water loving tree species such as *Populus x canescens* and invasive species such as *Arundo donax* and *Typha capensis*;
- Ensure that all stockpiles are well managed and have measures such as berms and hessian sheets implemented to prevent erosion and sedimentation which may ultimately lead to transformation of aquatic habitat areas;
- Dirty water dams should be off stream structures and not within the natural drainage system of the area, thereby minimising impacts loss or transformation of aquatic habitat;
- Dirty water dams should be off stream structures and not within the natural drainage system of the area, thereby minimising impacts from inundation and siltation;
- Limit the footprint area of the construction activity to what is absolutely essential in order to avoid disturbance of soils leading to runoff, erosion and sedimentation and loss of instream flow and stream recharge;
- > Monitor all systems for erosion and incision;
- > Monitor all affected riparian systems for moisture stress;
- An extensive monitoring programme will need to be implemented to track the cone of depression on an ongoing basis for the life of the mine and suitable mitigation measures will be required to protect surface water recharge in the vicinity of the proposed mining project;
- An extensive monitoring programme will need to be implemented to tract the cone of depression on an ongoing basis for the life of the mine and suitable mitigation measures will be required to protect surface water recharge in the vicinity of the proposed development. Monitor all potentially affected riparian zones for changes in riparian vegetation structure;
- Ongoing aquatic ecological monitoring must take place on a bi-annual basis by an SA RHP Accredited assessor;
- Ongoing aquatic biomonitoring should take place in order to identify any emerging issues in the receiving environment for the life of the proposed mining project.

IMPACT 4: LOSS OF AQUATIC BIODIVERSITY AND SENSITIVE TAXA

The planned mining activities of the proposed Doornhoek mining project have the potential to lead to a loss of aquatic biodiversity as impacts on instream flow, water quality and habitat will all affect species diversity and especially more sensitive taxa and species of conservation concern.



Loss or a decrease of aquatic biodiversity and sensitive taxa is largely driven by impacts stressed by instream flow, altered water quality and habitat loss. The aquatic ecosystems in the region of the subject property provide suitable habitat for rare and endangered species conservation and hence have a high significance with reference to sensitive taxa, most notably the red data Marico barbs (*E. motebensis*). Habitat degradation from impacts such as water extraction, flow modification/river regulation and sedimentation are considered serious threats to the aquatic resources present. Given the largely natural to moderately modified state (according to the PES, EIS and groundwater categorizations in the March 2012 DWA report, number RDM/WMA 1,3/00/CON/CLA/0112A, as well as field verifications) of the aquatic resources within the larger area surrounding the proposed Doornhoek mining project, the aquatic ecosystems are considered to be sensitive. Any mining activities, if not adequately mitigated, are expected to have a detrimental impact on aquatic ecosystems function, including fish communities, in the subject property. Mining in the direct vicinity of any aquatic ecosystems is thus discouraged and very well contemplated, executed and managed clean and dirty water separation systems will be required. In addition, due to the extensive groundwater systems and springs feeding many of the surface water systems present, very strict measures and management will need to be put in place so as to prevent any seepage to and contamination thereof.

The monitoring of aquatic communities such as macro-invertebrates and fish within aquatic systems vary over season and other factors such as weather play a vital role when field studies are conducted. It is thus crucial to implement a regular monitoring strategy which will increase the data set and understanding of the aquatic community within the surrounding aquatic systems linked in the vicinity of the proposed mining area. It is recommended that a biannual high flow (Summer) and low flow (Winter) biomonitoring strategy be implemented as part of the ongoing monitoring program with an initial quarterly assessment prior to major construction in the area. Regular monitoring of the groundwater resources is deemed critical so as to promote early identification and mitigation of any arising issues and impacts.

The following activities are deemed likely to impact the aquatic biodiversity and sensitivity of the receiving environment:

- Potentially poor planning leading to the placement of infrastructure within nonperennial drainage lines with special mention of the overburden stockpile areas, road crossings and bridges may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity;
- Potentially inadequate design of infrastructure leading to changes to instream habitat and to system hydrology, which may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity;



- Potentially inadequate design of infrastructure leading to contamination of water and sediments in the streams, which may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity;
- Site clearing, the removal of vegetation and road construction may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity;
- Earthworks and other mining construction activities in the vicinity of riparian areas may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity;
- Construction of bridge crossings altering streamflow patterns and water velocities may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity;
- Inadequate separation of clean and dirty water areas may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity;
- Ongoing disturbance of soils with general operational activities may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity;
- Inadequate separation of clean and dirty water areas may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity;
- Loss of instream flow due to abstraction for water for production may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity;
- Seepage from the ore stockpiles, the stockpile silos and the proposed tailings storage facility may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity;
- Potential discharge from the mine process water system with special mention of Return Water Dams and any Dirty Water Dams may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity;
- Sewage discharge from mine offices and camps may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity;
- Disturbance of soils as part of demolition activities may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity;
- Inadequate closure leading to post closure impacts on water quality may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity; and
- Ongoing erosion of disturbed areas that have not been adequately rehabilitated may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.

Aspects of aquatic biodiversity likely to be affected include the following:

- Sedimentation and loss of natural substrates;
- Altered stream channel forms;
- Increased turbidity of water;
- Loss of refugia;
- Deterioration in water quality;
- Loss of flow sensitive macro-invertebrates and fish;
- > Loss of water-sensitive macro-invertebrates and fish;



- Loss of riparian vegetation species; and
- > Eutrophication of the aquatic ecosystems.

Specific mitigation measures for impacts to aquatic habitat include the following:

- Ensure that as far as possible all infrastructures are placed outside of drainage and river areas. In particular mention is made of the need to not encroach on the riparian systems near the Klein Marico River and its associated drainage lines with a minimum buffer of 100m around all riparian systems maintained in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National Water Act;
- No use of clean surface water or any groundwater which potentially recharges the watercourses in the area should take place. In this regard specific mention is made of any water use which will affect the instream flow in the Klein Marico River and the associated tributaries and in turn affect more sensitive taxa which require faster flowing habitat;
- Dirty water dams should be off stream and tributary structures and not within the natural drainage system of the area, thereby minimising impacts from loss of instream flow and downstream recharge;
- > Permit only essential construction personnel within 100m of all riparian systems;
- Keep all demarcated sensitive zones outside of the construction area off limits during the construction and operational phase of the development;
- Implement an ongoing alien vegetation control program for the life of the proposed mining project including both the pre-construction and closure phases of the project;
- Very clear and well managed clean and dirty water separation must take place in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National Water Act;
- Dirty water dams must be adequately designed to contain a 1:50 24 hour storm water event;
- All dirty water facilities must be managed in such a way as to ensure that storage and surge capacity is available if a rainfall event occurs;
- Limit the footprint area of the construction activity to what is absolutely essential in order to minimise the loss of clean water runoff areas and the concomitant recharge of streams in the area and the disturbance of soils leading to runoff, erosion and sedimentation;
- > Ensure that all spills are immediately cleaned up;
- > All hazardous chemicals must be stored on specified surfaces;
- Ensure that all stockpiles are well managed and have measures such as berms and hessian sheets implemented to prevent erosion and sedimentation which may ultimately lead to transformation of aquatic habitat areas;



- Dirty water dams should be off stream structures and not within the natural drainage system of the area, thereby minimising impacts loss or transformation of aquatic habitat;
- Keep all demarcated sensitive zones outside of the construction area off limits during the construction phase of the development as well as during the operational phase of the mine;
- Dirty water dams should be off stream structures and not within the natural drainage system of the area, thereby minimising impacts from inundation and siltation;
- Any areas where active erosion is observed must be rehabilitated and berms utilised to slow movement of water;
- Prevent run-off from dirty water areas entering stream systems through ensuring clear separation of clean and dirty water areas;
- Ensure that the mine process water system is managed in such a way as to prevent discharge to the receiving environment and to prevent discharge of dirty water;
- Implement measures to contain seepage as far as possible to prevent contamination of the groundwater regime;
- > Monitor all systems for erosion and incision;
- Activities of the proposed Doornhoek mining project are likely to result in a cone of depression affecting the groundwater aquifers present, with specific mention of a general lowering of the water table in the vicinity of the proposed activities, as well as a loss in water pressure;
- Very strict control of water consumption must take place and detailed monitoring must take place and where all water usage must continuously be optimised;
- Upstream dewatering boreholes should be considered to minimise the creation of dirty water and this clean water should be used to recharge the natural systems downstream of the mining rights areas, so as to aid in the prevention of the contamination of the groundwater resources without compromising on surface water recharge further downstream;
- > Monitor all affected riparian systems for moisture stress;
- Monitor all potentially affected riparian zones for changes in riparian vegetation structure;
- Ongoing aquatic ecological monitoring must take place on a bi-annual basis by an SA RHP Accredited assessor in order to identify any emerging issues in the receiving environment;
- Monitor all dirty water facilities using toxicological screening methods and implement the calculation of discharge dilution factors by means of the Direct Estimation of



Ecological Effect Potential (DEEEP) protocol should any discharges to the receiving environment become necessary;

Toxicological monitoring of the receiving and process water systems on a quarterly basis.

5.1.1 Probable latent impacts

Even with extensive mitigation, latent impacts on the receiving aquatic environment are deemed possible. The following points highlight the key latent impacts that have been identified:

- Reduced availability of refugia for aquatic and wetland biota;
- > Altered riparian and wetland vegetation structures;
- > Ongoing salinisation of the water courses in the area;
- Impacts on dissolved oxygen concentration and saturation;
- > Loss of aquatic taxa intolerant to poor quality water;
- Sedimentation of the systems may occur long after mining has ceased;
- Eroded and incised streams are unlikely to be rehabilitated;
- Silted up refuge pools are unlikely to be naturally rehabilitated and are unlikely to be rehabilitated by the mine;
- Loss of some flow dependent species is likely;
- Loss of some species less tolerant of water quality changes is likely;
- > Loss of some low flow refugia is possible.

5.1.2 Positive offsets

- The aquatic resources in the vicinity of the proposed project are currently impacted significantly by alien and invasive vegetation encroachment, with special mention of water loving shrubs, trees (Acacia mearnsii) and reeds, which serve to reduce surface water recharge and instream flow;
- The implementation of an ongoing, correctly implemented, alien vegetation removal programme for the life of the mine and into the closure and post-closure phases is likely to have a significant positive effect on surface water recharge to the surrounding systems and further on to the aquatic resources further downstream in the catchment;
- Restoration of stream flow and connectivity in these systems may have positive benefits to the aquatic communities likely to occur at these points, with special mention of species reliant on migration routes along the systems.



5.2 Impact assessment conclusion

This report, after consideration and description of the aquatic ecological integrity of the resources in and in the vicinity of the mining rights area and mining footprint area, must guide the Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP), authorities and mining company, by means of presentation and discussion of the gathered data, as well as presentation of recommendations, as to the viability of the proposed mining development from an aquatic ecological point of view. In terms of the findings of the aquatic study, should the proposed Doornhoek mining project proceed, the preferred surface infrastructure, Layout Option 4, is recommended in terms of preservation of the aquatic integrity of the surface water resources present, however, Layout Options 1 and 3 may also be considered. Layout Option 2 is regarded as the least suitable option since it affects the upper reaches of the drainage lines associated with the Klein Marico River and its associated tributaries and may result in direct impacts to the aquatic resources further downstream.

The Doornhoek mining project is located within an area of increased ecological importance and sensitivity in terms of the groundwater resources present (DWA, 2012). The groundwater resources in this area play a significant role in the recharge of aquifers and of the surface water resources in the vicinity of the proposed project. Therefore, on this basis, should the project proceed it is considered likely that the project will have an ecological impact of the groundwater resources present, both within and potentially beyond the boundaries of the project. The potential for post-closure impacts on both water quality as well as water quantity, with special mention of the groundwater resources present, are of concern. Therefore, unless it is considered economically feasible to treat and/or contain all potential sources of contaminated water which may affect the receiving environment post-closure indefinitely to pre-mining water quality standards in such a way as to support the post closure land use and land capability, which supports the adjacent land uses, and to ensure rehabilitation back to natural or largely natural land capability, the project is regarded as posing a high long term impact on the regions' underground water resources in terms of fluoride contamination. In addition, should fluorides result in any precipitate, forming fluorite salts, these salts have the potential to significantly affect the surface water resources present in the form of impacts to water clarity and sedimentation. It is highly recommended that should it nonetheless be deemed appropriate to mine the resource from a cumulative sustainable development point of view, as much infrastructure as possible be moved to the areas where historical disturbance as a result of anthropogenic activity has occurred. In addition, the infrastructure required to access the resource must be kept to the absolute minimum. Furthermore, extensive mitigation must be applied during the construction and operational phases of the project to ensure that no unacceptable impact takes place beyond the surface infrastructure footprint. In this regard



particular mention is made of the management of the groundwater, surface water and the dirty water area of the mine footprint and the impact of mining related activities on the aquatic resources both in and further downstream of the mining rights area. Strict monitoring throughout the life of the mine and post-closure is required in order to ensure the health and functioning of the aquatic ecosystems is retained. The water resources will need to be rehabilitated in such a way as to support the larger drainage systems at the same level as those evident in the pre-mining condition and with particular mention of ensuring that no significant impact takes place on the groundwater, surface water and downstream river systems. It is deemed important that a desktop reserve model be run on the Klein Marico river at a point a short distance downstream of the proposed mining operations in order to determine the EWR. This will allow site specific instream flow and water quality requirements to be determined which in turn will allow for improved planning and decision making to ensure that reserve requirements on a local scale can be met. In order to meet this objective, rehabilitation will need to be well planned and a suitably qualified ecologist must form part of the management team through the entire life cycle of the project and to guide the rehabilitation (including concurrent rehabilitation) and closure objectives of the mine.

From the results of the assessment it is evident that prior to mitigation, all impacts on the ecology of the Klein Marico River and its associated tributaries are either high or medium-high, with special mention of impacts to groundwater quality and the likelihood that the proposed activities will result in a cone of depression that unless adequately managed, may result in loss of surface water recharge, loss of groundwater pressure as well as moisture stress for wetland and riparian vegetation. In addition, impacts to surface water clarity and sedimentation of the surface water resources are considered possible. However, with mitigation, most impacts may be reduced to low or negligible impacts (See Appendix 8).



6 **REFERENCES**

- Chutter, F. M. 1998. Research on the rapid biological assessment of water quality impacts in streams and rivers. Report to the water research commission by Environmentek, CSIR, WRC report No 422/1/98. Pretoria: Government printer.
- Dallas, H.F. 2007. River Health Programme: South African Scoring System (SASS) data interpretation guidelines. The Freshwater Consulting Group / Freshwater Research Unit, University of Cape Town.
- Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (1996). South African water quality guidelines vol. 7, Aquatic ecosystems
- Dickens, C. & Graham, M. 2001. South African Scoring System (SASS) version 5. Rapid bio assessment for rivers May 2001. CSIR. <u>http://www.csir.co.za/rhp/sass.html</u>
- Directorate Water Resource Classification. Department of Water Affairs, South Africa, September 2011. Classification of significant water resources in the Mokolo and Matlabas catchments: Limpopo Water Management Area (WMA) and Crocodile (West) and Marico WMA: Ecological Water Requirements Report. Report No: RDM/WMA 1,3/00/CON/CLA/0312.
- Kemper, N. 1999. Intermediate Habitat Integrity assessment for use in rapid and intermediate assessments. RDM Manual version 1.0.
- Kleynhans, C. J. 2002. Fish Intolerance ratings. Proceedings resulting from the national fish workshop held at the WRC during 2001.
- Kleynhans, C. J. 2007. Module D: Fish response assessment index (FRAI). In: River ecoclassification manual for ecostatus determination (Version 2): Report produced for the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (Resource Quality Services) and the Water Research Commission.
- Kleynhans CJ, Mackenzie J, Louw MD. 2007. Module F: Riparian Vegetation Response Assessment Index in River EcoClassification: Manual for EcoStatus Determination (version 2). Joint Water Research Commission and DWA and Forestry report. WRC Report No.
- Kleynhans C.J., Thirion C. and Moolman J. 2005. A Level 1 Ecoregion Classification System for South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland. Report No. N/0000/00/REQ0104. Resource Quality Services, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, Pretoria.



- Kleynhans, C. J., Louw, M.D. and Moolman, J. 2007. Reference frequency of occurrence of fish species in South Africa. Report produced for the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (Resource Quality Services) and the Water Research Commission.
- McMillan, P.H. (1998). An integrated habitat assessment system (IHAS v2) for the rapid biological assessment of rivers and streams. A CSIR research project. Number ENV-P-I 98132 for the water resources management programme. CSIR. ii +44 pp.
- North West Provincial Government: Department of Environment and Agricultural Development: North West Biodiversity sector Plan (NW BSP) 2015.
- Plomp, H. (2004) A process for assessing and evaluating environmental management risk and significance in a gold mining company. Conference Papers-Annual National Conference of the International Association for Impact Assessment: South African Affiliate. River Health Programme (2005).
- State-of-Rivers Report Number 9: Monitoring and Managing the Ecological State of Rivers in the Crocodile (West) Marico Water Management Area. Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism. Pretoria.
- Skelton, P. H. (2001). A complete guide to freshwater fishes of Southern Africa. Southern Book Publishers (Pty) Ltd., Halfway House. 388pp.
- Thirion C. 2007. Module E: Macro-Invertebrate response assessment index (MIRAI). In: River ecoclassification manual for ecostatus determination (Version 2): Joint Water Research Commission and Department of Water Affairs and Forestry report.
- Thirion, C. A; Mocke, A and Woest, R. 1995. Biological Monitoring of Streams and Rivers using SASS4: A User Manual. Final Report, No. N 000/00/REQ/1195. Institute of Water Quality Studies, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry.



APPENDIX 1: Project Key Staff

Stephen van Staden SACNASP REG.NO: 400134/05

Stephen van Staden completed an undergraduate degree in Zoology, Geography and Environmental Management at RAU. On completion of this degree, he undertook an honours course in Aquatic health through the Zoology department at RAU. In 2002 he began a Masters degree in environmental management, where he did his mini dissertation in the field of aquatic resource management, also undertaken at RAU. At the same time, Stephen began building a career by first working at an environmental consultancy specialising in town planning developments, after which he moved to a larger firm in late 2002. From 2002 to the end of 2003, he managed the monitoring division and acted as a specialist consultant on water resource management issues and other environmental processes and applications. In late 2003, Stephen started consulting as an independent environmental scientist, specialising in water resource management under the banner of Scientific Aquatic Services. In addition to aquatic ecological assessments, clients started enquiring about terrestrial ecological assessments and biodiversity assessments. Stephen, in conjunction with other qualified ecologists, began facilitating these studies as well as highly specialised studies on specific endangered species, including grass owls, arachnids, invertebrates and various vegetation species. Scientific Aquatic Services soon became recognised as a company capable of producing high quality terrestrial ecological assessments. Stephen soon began diversifying into other fields, including the development of EIA process, EMPR activities and mine closure studies.

Stephen has experience on well over 1000 environmental assessment projects with specific mention of aquatic and wetland ecological studies, as well as terrestrial ecological assessments and project management of environmental studies. Stephen has a professional career spanning more than 10 years, of which almost the entire period has been as the owner and Managing member of Scientific Aquatic Services and the project manager on most projects undertaken by the company. Stephen has also obtained extensive experience in wetland and aquatic assessments in the Limpopo Plains aquatic ecoregion.

Stephen is registered by the SA RHP as an accredited aquatic biomonitoring specialist and is also registered as a Professional Natural Scientist with the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP) in the field of ecology. Stephen is also a member of the Gauteng Wetland Forum and South African Soil Surveyors Association (SASSO).



Kieren Jayne Bremner

Kieren Jayne Bremner completed an undergraduate degree in Zoology and Biochemistry at the Rand Afrikaans University. On completion of this degree, she undertook an honours course in Natural Sciences focussing on Aquatic health through the Zoology department at the University of Johannesburg. She began a Masters degree in Aquatic Health and Environmental Management and in 2007 she began building a career by first working at an engineering firm (TWP Consultants) in the Environmental Management department as a Junior Environmental Scientist, where she was exposed to various sectors of the Environmental Management field such as water use licensing, BAs, EIAs and public participation. During this time she was given the opportunity to initiate and manage various aquatic biomonitoring programmes within the mining and energy production sectors within South Africa. In 2009, Kieren moved to Scientific Aquatic Services, where she began working as an Aquatic Ecologist and Junior Wetland Ecologist. She gained invaluable and extensive experience in the biomonitoring and water monitoring field in rivers and wetlands throughout South Africa. In 2014, having left SAS, Kieren began working at the Sustainable Seas Trust, in the Eastern Cape, where she assisted in fund-raising for the implementation of "Hope Spots" for 6 areas along the South African coastline as well as contributed towards the Education and Awareness Campaign for conservation of our South African Coastline. Kieren also joined Estuary Care in Kenton-on-Sea, Eastern Cape, where she was responsible for monitoring the water quality of the Bushmans and Kariega Estuaries and reporting of spatial and temporal trends. In 2015, Kieren returned to SAS. Kieren is registered by the SA RHP as an accredited biomonitoring specialist.



APPENDIX 2: Indemnity and Terms of Use of this Report

The findings, results, observations, conclusions and recommendations presented in this report are based on the author's best scientific and professional knowledge as well as available information. The report is based on survey and assessment techniques which are limited by time and budgetary constraints relevant to the type and level of investigation undertaken.

SAS cc and its staff reserve the right to modify aspects of the report including the recommendations if and when new information may become available from ongoing research or further work in this field, or pertaining to this investigation.

Although SAS cc exercises due care and diligence in rendering services and preparing documents, SAS cc accepts no liability and the client, by receiving this document, indemnifies SAS cc and its directors, managers, agents and employees against all actions, claims, demands, losses, liabilities, costs, damages and expensed arising from or in connection with services rendered, directly or indirectly by SAS cc and by the use of the information contained in this document.

This report must not be altered or added to without the prior written consent of the author. This also refers to electronic copies of this report which are supplied for the purposes of inclusion as part of other reports, including main reports. Similarly, any recommendations, statements or conclusions drawn from or based on this report must make reference to this report. If these form part of a main report relating to this investigation or report, this report must be included in its entirety as an appendix or separate section to the main report.



APPENDIX 3: Legislative Requirements

Minerals and petroleum Resource Development Act (MPRDA) (Act 28 of 2002);

The obtaining of a New Order Mining Right (NOMR) is governed by the MPRDA. The MPRDA requires the applicant to apply to the DMR for a NOMR which triggers a process of compliance with the various applicable sections of the MPRDA. The NOMR process requires environmental authorisation in terms of the MPRDA Regulations and specifically requires the preparation of a Scoping Report, an Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) and Environmental Management Programme (EMP), and a Public Participation Process. In order to inform the development of an EIA and EMP, specialist baseline studies are required in order to define the sensitivities and risks associated with the project area and within the sphere of influence of the project.

National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998)

The National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998) and the associated Regulations (Listing No R. 544, No R. 545 and R. 546) as amended in June 2010, states that prior to any development taking place within a wetland or riparian area, an environmental authorisation process needs to be followed. This could follow either the Basic Assessment process or the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) process depending on the nature of the activity and scale of the impact.

National Water Act (NWA; Act 36 of 1998)

- The NWA; Act 36 of 1998 recognises that the entire ecosystem and not just the water itself in any given water resource, constitutes the resource and as such needs to be conserved. No activity may therefore take place within a watercourse unless it is authorised by the Department of Water Affairs (DWA).
- Any area within a wetland or riparian zone is therefore excluded from development unless authorisation is obtained from DWA in terms of Section 21 of the NWA.

GN 704 – Regulations on use of water for mining and related activities aimed at the protection of water resources, 1999

These Regulations, forming part of the NWA, were put in place in order to prevent the pollution of water resources and protect water resources in areas where mining activity is taking place from impacts generally associated with mining.



It is recommended that the proposed project complies with Regulation GN 704 of the NWA, 1998 (act no. 36 of 1998) which contains regulations on use of water for mining and related activities aimed at the protection of water resources. GN 704 states that:

No person in control of a mine or activity may:

(a) locate or place any residue deposit, dam, reservoir, together with any associated structure or any other facility within the 1:100 year floodline or within a horizontal distance of 100 metres from any watercourse or estuary, borehole or well, excluding boreholes or wells drilled specifically to monitor the pollution of groundwater, or on waterlogged ground, or on ground likely to become waterlogged, undermined, unstable or cracked;

According to the above, the activity footprint must fall outside of the 1:100 year floodline of the drainage feature or 100m from the edge of the feature, whichever distance is the greatest.



APPENDIX 4: Method of Assessment

Literature Review

Water resources are generally classified according to the degree of modification or level of impairment. The classes used by the South African River Health Program (RHP) will be used as the basis of classification of the systems in the study area.

The Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) Resource Quality Services (RQS) **PES/EIS database** was utilised to obtain additional background information on the project area. The PES/EIS database has been made available to consultants since mid-August 2014.

The information from this database is based on information at a sub-quaternary catchment reach (subquat reach) level with the descriptions of the aquatic ecology based on the information collated by the DWS RQIS department from all reliable sources of reliable information such as SA RHP sites, EWR sites and Hydro WMS sites.

Information for sub-quaternary catchment reach (SQR) A31D-01019 (Klein Marico River) is applicable. Key information on background conditions within the study area, as contained in this database and pertaining to the Present Ecological State (PES), ecological importance and ecological sensitivity for the Klein Marico River, is reported on.

In addition, two other reports on the Crocodile (West) Marico WMA were consulted, namely State-of-Rivers-Report Number 9 (River Health Programme 2005) as well as Ecological Water Requirements Report number RDM/WMA 1,3/00/CON/CLA/0312 (Department of Water Affairs 2011).

Aquatic Ecological Assessment sites and site selection

As part of the feasibility study potential aquatic biomonitoring points were selected on the various drainage features in the vicinity of the study area. Each site was investigated and visually assessed in order to determine whether the points were suitable for the application of aquatic ecological assessment indices. During the selection of aquatic ecological assessment points the following criteria were used to identify the most suitable points:

- > Site location in relation to proposed mining activities planned at this stage;
- > Site location in relation to the existing infrastructure and activities in the area;
- > Accessibility with a vehicle in order to allow for the transport of equipment;



- The sites were selected where there was suitable habitat conditions with the best level of diversity in relation to the condition of each stream assessed; and
- > Position of sites in such a way to allow spatial variation and trends to be determined.

Visual Assessment of Aquatic Assessment Points

Each site was selected in order to identify current conditions, with specific reference to impacts from surrounding activities where applicable. Both natural constraints placed on ecosystem structure and function, as well as anthropogenic alterations to the systems identified, was identified by observing conditions and relating them to professional experience. Photographs of each site were taken to provide visual records of the conditions at the time of assessment. Factors which were noted in the site-specific visual assessments included the following:

- > Upstream and downstream significance of each point, where applicable;
- > Significance of the point in relation to the study area;
- stream morphology;
- instream and riparian habitat diversity;
- stream continuity;
- erosion potential;
- depth flow and substrate characteristics;
- > signs of physical disturbance of the area; and
- > other life forms reliant on aquatic ecosystems.

Physico-chemical Water Quality Data

On site testing of biota specific water quality variables took place on all sites where surface water was present. The results of on-site biota specific water quality analyses were used to aid in the interpretation of the data obtained by the biomonitoring. Results are discussed against the guideline water quality values for aquatic ecosystems (DWAF, 1996 vol. 7).

Intermediate Habitat Integrity Assessment (IHIA)

It is important to assess the habitat of riverine systems in order to aid in the interpretation of the results of the community integrity assessments by taking habitat conditions and impacts into consideration. The general habitat integrity of the sites was assessed based on the application of the Intermediate Habitat Integrity Assessment for (Kemper; 1999). The Intermediate Habitat Integrity Assessment (IHIA) protocol, as described by Kemper (1999), was used using the site specific application protocols. This is a simplified procedure, which is based on the Habitat Integrity approach developed by Kleynhans (1996). The IHIA is conducted as a first level exercise, where a comprehensive exercise is not practical.



The Habitat Integrity of each site was scored according to 12 different criteria which represent the most important (and easily quantifiable) anthropogenically induced possible impacts on the system. The instream and riparian zones were analysed separately, and the final assessment was then made separately for each, in accordance with Kemper' (1999) approach to Habitat Integrity Assessment. Data for the riparian zone is, primarily interpreted in terms of the potential impact on the instream component. The assessment of the severity of impact of modifications is based on six descriptive categories with ratings. Analysis of the data was carried out by weighting each of the criteria according to Kemper (1999). By calculating the mean of the instream and riparian Habitat Integrity scores, an overall Habitat Integrity score can be obtained for each site. This method describes the Present Ecological State (PES) of both the in-stream and riparian habitats of the sites. The method classifies Habitat Integrity into one of six classes, ranging from unmodified/natural (Class A), to critically modified (Class F).

Invertebrate Habitat Suitability (Invertebrate Habitat Assessment: IHAS)

The Invertebrate Habitat Assessment System (IHAS) was applied to sites DHK BP1, DHK BP2, DHK BP3, DHK BP4 and DHK BP5 according to the protocol of McMillan (1998).

This index was used to determine specific habitat suitability for aquatic macro-invertebrates, as well as to aid in the interpretation of the results of the South African Scoring System version 5 (SASS5) scores. Scores for the IHAS index were interpreted according to the guidelines of McMillan (1998) as follows:

- <65%: habitat diversity and structure is inadequate for supporting a diverse aquatic macro-invertebrate community.</p>
- 65%-75%: habitat diversity and structure is adequate for supporting a diverse aquatic macro-invertebrate community.
- >75%: habitat diversity and structure is highly suited for supporting a diverse aquatic macro-invertebrate community.

Riparian Vegetation Response Assessment Index (VEGRAI)

Riparian vegetation is described in the NWA (Act No 36 of 1998) as follows: 'riparian habitat' includes the physical structure and associated vegetation of the areas associated with a watercourse which are commonly characterised by alluvial soils, and which are inundated or flooded to an extent and with a frequency sufficient to support vegetation of species with a composition and physical structure distinct from those of adjacent land areas.



VEGRAI is designed for qualitative assessment of the response of riparian vegetation to impacts in such a way that qualitative ratings translate into quantitative and defensible results². Results are defensible because their generation can be traced through an outlined process. The latter pertains to a suite of rules that convert assessor estimates into ratings and converts multiple ratings into an Ecological Category.

Ecological category	Description	Score (% of total)
А	Unmodified, natural.	90-100
В	Largely natural with few modifications. A small change in natural habitat and biota may have taken place but the ecosystem functions are essentially unchanged.	80-89
С	Moderately modified. Loss and change of natural habitat have occurred, but the basic ecosystem functions are still predominately unchanged.	60-79
D	Largely modified. A large loss of natural habitat, biota and basic ecosystem functions has occurred.	40-59
E	Seriously modified. The loss of natural habitat, biota and basic ecosystem functions is extensive.	20-39
F	Critically modified. Modifications have reached a critical level and the lotic system has been modified completely with an almost complete loss of natural habitat and biota. In the worst instances the basic ecosystem functions have been destroyed and the changes are irreversible	0-19

Aquatic Macro-Invertebrates: South African Scoring System (SASS5)

Aquatic macro-invertebrate communities of the accessible sites (DHK B1, DHK B2, DHK B3, DHK B4, DHK B5 and DHKK 4) were investigated according to the method, which is specifically designed to comply with international accreditation protocols. This method is based on the British Biological Monitoring Working Party (BMWP) method and has been adapted for South African conditions by Dr. F. M. Chutter (1998). The assessment was undertaken according to the South African Scoring System (SASS5) protocol as defined by Dickens & Graham (2001). All work was undertaken by an accredited South African Scoring System, version 5 (SASS5) practitioner.

Interpretation of the results of biological monitoring depends, to a certain extent, on interpretation of site-specific conditions (Thirion et.al, 1995). In the context of this investigation, it would be best not to use SASS5 scores in isolation, but rather in comparison with relevant habitat scores. The reason for this is that some sites have a less desirable habitat or fewer biotopes than others do. In other words, a low SASS5 score is not necessarily regarded as poor in conjunction with a low habitat score.

Also, a high SASS5 score in conjunction with a low habitat score can be regarded as better than a high SASS5 score in conjunction with a high habitat score. A low SASS5 score together



² Kleynhans et al, 2007

with a high habitat score would be indicative of poor conditions. The IHAS Index is valuable in helping to interpret SASS5 scores and the effects of habitat variation on aquatic macro-invertebrate community integrity.

The perceived reference state for the local streams was determined with consideration of the ecoregion conditions as well as site-specific conditions encountered during the assessments. Based on lack of flow in the systems the reference scores were defined as a SASS5 score of 150 and an Average Score Per Taxon (ASPT) of 5.9. Interpretation of the results in relation to the reference scores was made according to the classification of SASS5 scores presented in the SASS5 methodology published by Dickens and Graham (2001) as well as according to Dallas (2007).

 Table 4b: Definition of Present State Classes in terms of SASS and ASPT scores as presented in Dickens and Graham (2001)

Class	Description	SASS Score%	ASPT%
Α	Unimpaired. High diversity of taxa with numerous	90-100	Variable
	sensitive taxa.	80-89	>90
В	Slightly impaired. High diversity of taxa, but with fewer	80-89	<75
	sensitive taxa.	70-79	>90
		70-89	76-90
С	Moderately impaired. Moderate diversity of taxa.	60-79	<60
		50-59	>75
		50-79	60-75
D	Largely impaired. Mostly tolerant taxa present.	50–59	<60
		40-49	Variable
E	Severely impaired. Only tolerant taxa present.	20-39	Variable
F	Critically impaired. Very few tolerant taxa present.	0-19	Variable



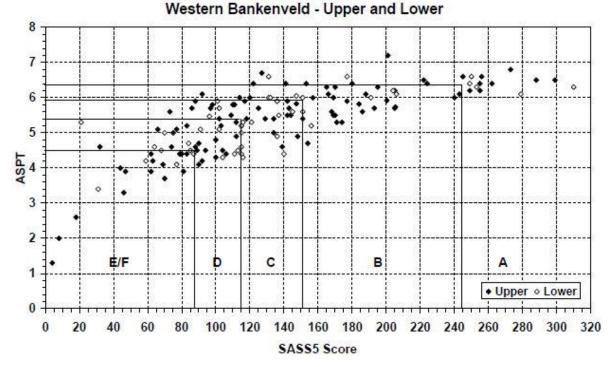


Figure 4a: SASS5 Classification using biological bands calculated from percentiles for the Western Bankenveld ecoregion, Dallas, 2007

Aquatic Macro-Invertebrates: Macro-invertebrate Response Assessment Index (MIRAI)

The four major components of a stream system that determine productivity, with particular reference to aquatic organisms, are flow regime, physical habitat structure, water quality and energy inputs. An interplay between these factors (particularly habitat and availability of food sources) result in the discontinuous, patchy distribution pattern of aquatic macro-invertebrate populations. As such, aquatic invertebrates shall respond to habitat changes (i.e. changes in driver conditions).

To relate drivers to such changes in habitat and aquatic invertebrate condition, two key elements are required. Firstly, habitat preferences and requirements for each taxa present should be obtained. As such, reference conditions can be established against which any response to drivers can be measured. Secondly, habitat features should be evaluated in terms of suitability and the requirements mentioned in the first point. As a result, expected and actual patterns can be evaluated to achieve an Ecostatus Category (EC) rating.

Based on the three key requirements, the MIRAI provides an approach to deriving and interpreting aquatic invertebrate response to driver changes.



The index has been applied to the two respective systems assessed, namely the unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River (DHK B1 and DHK B2) as well as the Klein Marico River (DHK B3, DHK B4 and DHK B5), following methodology described by Thirion (2007).

Aquatic macro-invertebrates expected at each point were derived both from the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) Resource Quality Services (RQS) PES/EIS database and supplemented with taxa actually collected at the five sites assessed.

Fish biota: Habitat Cover Rating (HCR) and Fish Habitat Assessment (FHA)

This approach was developed to assess habitats according to different attributes that are surmised to satisfy the habitat requirements of various fish species. At each site, the following depth-flow (df) classes are identified, namely:

- Slow (<0.3m/s), shallow (<0.5m) Shallow pools and backwaters.
- Slow, deep (>0.5m) Deep pools and backwaters.
- Fast (>0.3m/s), shallow Riffles, rapids and runs.
- ➢ Fast, deep Usually rapids and runs.

The relative contribution of each of the above-mentioned classes at a site was estimated and indicated as:

- 0 = Absent
- 1 = Rare (<5%)
- 2 = Sparse (5-25%)
- 3 = Moderate (25-75%)
- 4 = Extensive (>75%)

For each depth-flow class, the following cover features (cf) -considered to provide fish with the necessary cover to utilise a particular flow and depth class- were investigated:

- > Overhanging vegetation
- Undercut banks and root wads
- Stream substrate
- Aquatic macrophytes

The amount of cover present at each of these cover features (cf) was noted as:

- 0 = absent
- 1 = Rare/very poor (<5%)
- 2 = Sparse/poor (5-25%)
- 3 = Moderate/good (25-75%)



4 = Extensive/excellent (>75%)

The fish habitat cover rating (HCR) was calculated as follows:

- > The contribution of each depth-flow class at the site was calculated (df/ Σ df).
- > For each depth-flow class, the fish cover features (cf) were summed (Σ cf).

 $HCR = df / \Sigma df x \ \Sigma cf.$

The amount and diversity of cover available for the fish community at the selected sites was graphically expressed as habitat cover ratings (HCR) for different flow-depth classes as a stacked bar chart.

Fish biota: Fish Response Assessment Index (FRAI)

The FRAI (Kleynhans 2007) is based on the premise that "drivers" (environmental conditions) may cause fish stress which shall then manifest as changes in fish species assemblage.

The index employs preferences and intolerances of the reference fish assemblage, as well as the response of the actual (present) fish assemblage to particular drivers to indicate a change from reference conditions. Intolerances and preferences are divided into metric groups relating to preferences and requirements of individual species. This allows cause-effect relationships to be understood, i.e. between drivers and responses of the fish assemblage to changes in drivers. These metric groups are subsequently ranked, rated and finally integrated as a fish Ecological Category (EC). Fish species expected to occur in the system are summarised in the table on the next page.



Table 4c: Intolerance ratings as well as FROC (Kleynhans et al., 2007) scores for naturally occurring fish species expected to occur in the Klein Marico River and surrounding area. Footnotes indicate sources used to compile the list. Where FROC scores were not available, a score of "1" was allocated.

SPECIES NAME	COMMON NAME	INTOLE- RANCE RATING 1	FROC score	COMMENTS
Amphilius uranoscopus ³	Stargazer (mountain catfish)	4.8	3	Okovango and Zambezi systems, east coast rivers south to Mkuze in northern Kwa-Zulu Natal
Barbus anoplus ⁴	Chubbyhead Barb	2.6	1	Widely distributed from Highveld, Limpopo to upland KwaZulu-Natal, Transkei and the Orange Basin including the Karoo.
Enteromius bifrenatus ⁴	Hyphen barb	2.8	1	Widespread in the northern parts of southern Africa, including the Limpopo River systems
Enteromius motebensis ³ (Red Data List species)	Marico barb	3.1	3	The headwater tributaries of the Marico, Crocodile and Steelpoort branches of the Limpopo River System.
Enteromius paludinosis 3,5	Straightfin barb	1.8	3	Widespread
Enteromius trimaculatus	Threespot barb	2.2	3	Common in many river systems of southern Africa
Enteromius unitaeniatus 2	Longbeard barb	1.7	3	Widely distributed in southern Africa
Cyprinus carpio ⁴	Carp	1.4	1	Widespread throughout southern Africa.
Labeo cylindricus ⁴	Redeye labeo	3.1	1	Widespread East-African rivers down to Phongolo system in KwaZulu-Natal
Oreochromis mossambicus ²	Mozambique tilapia	1.3	3	East coastal rivers from the Lower Zambezi River south to the Bushman's system, Eastern Cape.
Pseudocrenilabrus philander ^{2,5}	Southern mouthbrooder	1.3	3	From the Orange and southern KwaZulu-Natal northwards throughout the region. Extends to southern Congo tributaries and Lake Malawi.
Tilapia sparrmanii ²	Banded Tilapia	1.3	3	Extensively translocated south of the Orange in the Cape.

¹ Intolerance ratings: Tolerant: 1-2; Moderately tolerant :> 2-3; Moderately Intolerant: >3-4; Intolerant: >4

² Listed in Kleynhans *et al.* (2007) for Crocodile (W) Marico quaternary catchment **A31D** with FROC scores also provided by Kleynhans *et al.* (2007);

³ Listed in Kleynhans *et al.* (2007) for Crocodile (W) Marico quaternary catchment **A31A** with FROC scores also provided by Kleynhans *et al.* (2007);

⁴ Based on distribution maps in Skelton (2001), these species may also potentially occur in this area. Frequency of occurrence (FROC) score not listed for these species for this system in Kleynhans *et al.* (2007). For the purposes of this a FROC score of "1" was allocated;

⁵ Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) Resource Quality Services (RQS) PES/EIS database lists these species for the Groot Marico River. The same species composition is expected in the Klein Marico River;



Aquatic EIS assessment

The EIS method considers a number of biotic and habitat determinants surmised to indicate either importance or sensitivity. The determinants are rated according to a four-point scale (Table 4d). The median of the resultant score is calculated to derive the EIS category.

Table 4d: Ecological importance and se	ensitivity categories (DWAF, 1999)
--	------------------------------------

EISC	General Description	Range of median
Very high	Quaternaries/delineations that are considered to be unique on a national and international level based on unique biodiversity (habitat diversity, species diversity, unique species, rare and endangered species). These rivers (in terms of biota and habitat) are usually very sensitive to flow modifications and have no or only a small capacity for use.	>3-4
High	Quaternaries/delineations that are considered to be unique on a national scale based on their biodiversity (habitat diversity, species diversity, unique species, rare and endangered species). These rivers (in terms of biota and habitat) may be sensitive to flow modifications but in some cases may have substantial capacity for use.	>2-≤3
Moderate	Quaternaries/delineations that are considered to be unique on a provincial or local scale due to biodiversity (habitat diversity, species diversity, unique species, rare and endangered species). These rivers (in terms of biota and habitat) are not usually very sensitive to flow modifications and often have substantial capacity for use.	>1-≤2
Low/ marginal	Quaternaries/delineations that is not unique on any scale. These rivers (in terms of biota and habitat) are generally not very sensitive to flow modifications and usually have substantial capacity for use.	≤1

ECOLOGICAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT METHODOLOGY

In order for the EAP to allow for sufficient consideration of all environmental impacts, impacts were assessed using a common, defensible method of assessing significance that will enable comparisons to be made between risks/impacts and will enable authorities, stakeholders and the client to understand the process and rationale upon which risks/impacts have been assessed. The method to be used for assessing risks/impacts is outlined in the sections below.

The first stage of risk/impact assessment is the identification of environmental activities, aspects and impacts. This is supported by the identification of receptors and resources, which allows for an understanding of the impact pathway and an assessment of the sensitivity to change. The definitions used in the impact assessment are presented below.

An activity is a distinct process or task undertaken by an organisation for which a responsibility can be assigned. Activities also include facilities or infrastructure that are possessed by an organisation.



- An environmental aspect is an 'element of an organizations activities, products and services which can interact with the environment'³. The interaction of an aspect with the environment may result in an impact.
- Environmental risks/impacts are the consequences of these aspects on environmental resources or receptors of particular value or sensitivity, for example, disturbance due to noise and health effects due to poorer air quality. In the case where the impact is on human health or well-being, this should be stated. Similarly, where the receptor is not anthropogenic, then it should, where possible, be stipulated what the receptor is.
- Receptors can comprise, but are not limited to, people or human-made systems, such as local residents, communities and social infrastructure, as well as components of the biophysical environment such as wetlands, flora and riverine systems.
- > **Resources** include components of the biophysical environment.
- > Frequency of activity refers to how often the proposed activity will take place.
- Frequency of impact refers to the frequency with which a stressor (aspect) will impact on the receptor.
- Severity refers to the degree of change to the receptor status in terms of the reversibility of the impact; sensitivity of receptor to stressor; duration of impact (increasing or decreasing with time); controversy potential and precedent setting; threat to environmental and health standards.
- > **Spatial extent** refers to the geographical scale of the impact.
- Duration refers to the length of time over which the stressor will cause a change in the resource or receptor.

The significance of the impact is then assessed by rating each variable numerically according to the defined criteria. Refer to the table below. The purpose of the rating is to develop a clear understanding of influences and processes associated with each impact. The severity, spatial scope and duration of the impact together comprise the consequence of the impact and when summed can obtain a maximum value of 15. The frequency of the activity and the frequency of the impact together comprise the likelihood of the impact occurring and can obtain a maximum value of 10. The values for likelihood and consequence of the impact are then read off a significance-rating matrix and are used to determine whether mitigation is necessary⁴.



³ The definition has been aligned with that used in the ISO 14001 Standard.

⁴ Some risks/impacts that have low significance will however still require mitigation

The assessment of significance is undertaken twice. Initial, significance is based on only natural and existing mitigation measures (including built-in engineering designs). The subsequent assessment takes into account the recommended management measures required to mitigate the impacts. Measures such as demolishing infrastructure, and reinstatement and rehabilitation of land, are considered post-mitigation.

The model outcome of the impacts was then assessed in terms of impact certainty and consideration of available information. The Precautionary Principle is applied in line with South Africa's National Environmental Management Act (No. 108 of 1997) in instances of uncertainty or lack of information, by increasing assigned ratings or adjusting final model outcomes. In certain instances, where a variable or outcome requires rational adjustment due to model limitations, the model outcomes have been adjusted.

Aspect	Description	Weight
Probability	Improbable	1
	Probable	2
	Highly Probable	4
	Definite	5
Duration	Short term	1
	Medium term	3
	Long term	4
	Permanent	5
Scale	Local	1
	Site	2
	Regional	3
Magnitude	Low	2
	Medium	6
	High	8
Significance		
	Negligible	=20</th
	Low	=40</th
	Moderate	=60</th
	High	>60

Table 4e: Criteria for assessing significance of impactsLIKELIHOOD AND CONSEQUENCE DESCRIPTORS

The following points were considered when undertaking the assessment:

- Risks and impacts were analysed in the context of the *project's area of influence* encompassing:
 - Primary project site and related facilities that the client and its contractors develops or controls;



- Areas potentially impacted by cumulative impacts for further planned development of the project, any existing project or condition and other project-related developments; and
- Areas potentially affected by impacts from unplanned but predictable developments caused by the project that may occur later or at a different location.
- > Risks/Impacts were assessed for all stages of the project cycle including:
 - Pre-Construction;
 - Construction;
 - Operation; and
 - Decommissioning and Closure; and
 - Post-Closure.

Mitigation measure development

The following points present the key concepts considered in the development of mitigation measures for the proposed development.

- Mitigation and performance improvement measures and actions that address the risks and impacts⁵ are identified and described in as much detail as possible.
- Measures and actions to address negative impacts will favour avoidance and prevention over minimisation, mitigation or compensation.
- Desired outcomes are defined, and have been developed in such a way as to be measurable events with performance indicators, targets and acceptable criteria that can be tracked over defined periods, with estimates of the resources (including human resource and training requirements) and responsibilities for implementation.



 $^{^{5}\ {\}rm Mitigation}\ {\rm measures}\ {\rm should}\ {\rm address}\ {\rm both}\ {\rm positive}\ {\rm and}\ {\rm negative}\ {\rm impacts}$

APPENDIX 5: IHIA

Klein Marico River

DHK B3 May 2016 0 16 8 4 2 6 0 0 2 65.7 C (Moderately modified) DHK B4 October 2014 2 4 6 2 8 0 0 4 2 86.4 B (Largely naturely modified) DHK B4 May 2016 0 16 14 2 2 4 0 0 6 70.9 C (Moderately modified)	I	Instream Zone Hal	bitat In	tegrity									
DHK B3 October 2014 0 4 6 4 4 0 0 6 2 88.1 B (Largely nate production) DHK B3 May 2016 0 16 8 4 2 6 0 0 2 65.7 C (Moderately modified) DHK B4 October 2014 2 4 6 2 8 0 0 4 2 86.4 B (Largely nate production) DHK B4 May 2016 0 16 14 2 2 4 0 0 4 2 86.4 B (Largely nate production) DHK B5 October 2014 4 4 2 2 4 0 0 4 2 86.4 B (Largely nate production) DHK B5 October 2014 4 4 2 2 4 0 0 6 70.9 C (Moderately modified) DHK K4 May 2016 0 2 2 0 0 0 0 96.8 A (Natural) None Small Moderate 0 2 <td></td> <td>Weights</td> <td>14</td> <td>13</td> <td>13</td> <td>13</td> <td>14</td> <td>10</td> <td>9</td> <td>8</td> <td>6</td> <td></td> <td></td>		Weights	14	13	13	13	14	10	9	8	6		
DHK B3 May 2016 0 16 8 4 2 6 0 0 2 65.7 C (Moderately modified) DHK B4 October 2014 2 4 6 2 8 0 0 4 2 86.4 B (Largely natural for a field) DHK B4 May 2016 0 16 14 2 2 4 0 0 6 70.9 C (Moderately modified) DHK B5 October 2014 4 4 2 2 4 0 0 6 70.9 C (Moderately modified) DHK B5 October 2014 4 4 6 2 12 0 0 4 2 78.4 C (Moderately modified) DHK B5 October 2014 4 4 6 2 12 0 0 4 2 78.4 C (Moderately modified) DHK K4 May 2016 0 2 2 0 2 0 0 96.8 A (Natural) None Small Moderate V Large Seriou	Reach		Water abstraction	Flow modification	Bed modification	Channel modification	Water quality	Inundation	Exotic macrophytes	Exotic fauna	waste	Total Score (%)	Classification
$\begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $		October 2014	0	4	6	4	4	0	0	6	2	88.1	B (Largely natural)
$\begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $	DHK B3	May 2016	0	16	8	4	2	6	0	0	2	65.7	C (Moderately
May 2016 0 16 14 2 2 4 0 0 6 70.9 C (Moderately modified) DHK B5 October 2014 4 4 6 2 12 0 0 4 2 78.4 C (Moderately modified) DHK B5 October 2014 4 4 6 2 12 0 0 4 2 78.4 C (Moderately modified) DHKK 4 May 2016 0 2 2 0 0 0 0 96.8 A (Natural) None Small Moderate Large Serious Critical		October 2014	2	4	6	2	8	0	0	4	2	86.4	B (Largely natural)
DHK B5October 2014446212004278.4C (Moderately modified)DHKK 4May 201C02202000096.8A (Natural)NoneSmallModerateModerateLargeSeriousCritical	DHK B4	May 2016	0	16	14	2	2	4	0	0	6	70.9	C (Moderately
None Small Moderate Large Serious Critical	DHK B5	October 2014	4	4	6	2	12	0	0	4	2	78.4	C (Moderately
	DHKK 4	May 2016	0	2	2	0	2	0	0	0	0	96.8	A (Natural)
Dinarian Zana Habitat Integrity					oderate		L	arge	•		Serio	us	Critical
Weights 13 12 14 12 13 11 12 13		Riparian Zone Hat											

	Weights	13	12	14	12	13	11	12	13		
Reach	ASSESSMENT DATE	Vegetation removal	Alien encroachment	Bank erosion	Water abstraction	Flow modification	Channel modification	Water quality	Inundation	Total Score (%)	Classification
	October 2014	11	7	4	0	0	0	0	0	85.2	B (Largely natural)
DHK B3	May 2016	11	7	4	0	2	2	0	0	81.7	B (Largely natural)
	October 2014	7	6	1	1	0	0	8	0	88.8	B (Largely natural)
DHK B4	May 2016	7	6	14	0	4	0	0	0	82.8	B (Largely natural)
DHK B5	October 2014	7	4	1	3	0	0	12	0	69.9	C (Moderately modified)
DHKK 4	May 2016	0	0	2	0	2	2	0	0	96.9	A (Natural)
None	Small	•	Mod	derate		Large			Serio	us	Critical

REACH	ASSESSMENT DATE	INSTREAM HABITAT	RIPARIAN ZONE	IHI SCORE	CLASS
	October 2014	88.1	85.2	86.6	B (Largely natural)
DHK B3	May 2016	65.7	81.7	73.7	C (Moderately modified)
	October 2014	86.4	88.8	87.6	B (Largely natural)
DHK B4	May 2016	70.9	82.8	76.8	C (Moderately modified)
DHK B5	October 2014	78.4	69.9	74.1	C (Moderately modified)
DHKK 4	May 2016	96.8	96.9	96.9	A (Natural)



Unnamed tributary of the Klein Marico River

	Instream Zone Ha										-	
	Weights	14	13	13	13	14	10	9	8	6		
Reach	ASSESSMENT DATE	Water abstraction	Flow modification	Bed modification	Channel modification	Water quality	Inundation	Exotic macrophytes	Exotic fauna	Solid waste disposal	Total Score (%)	Classification
	October 2014	21	21	9	16	0	7	0	0	2	25.5	E (Extensive loss)
DHK B1	May 2016	21	21	9	16	0	7	0	0	2	25.5	E (Extensive loss)
DHK B2	October 2014	19	8	6	7	4	0	0	6	4	59.9	C (Moderately modified)
	May 2016	19	12	16	7	4	8	0	6	4	40.9	D (Largely modified)
None	Small			derate			Large			Serio	us	Critical
	Riparian Zone Hat								1 (0		1	,1
	Weights	13	12	14	12	2	13	11	12	13		
Reach	ASSESSMENT DATE	Vegetation removal	Alien encroachment	Bank erosion	Water abstraction		Flow modification	Channel modification	Water quality	Inundation	Total Score (%)	Classification
DHK B1	October 2014	11	7	0	9	ç)	9	0	4	71.6	C (Moderately modified)
	May 2016	11	7	0	9	ç)	9	0	4	71.6	C (Moderately
DHK B2	October 2014	13	16	9	6	6	6	6	0	0	55.4	D (Largely modified)
	May 2016	13	16	9	6	1	16	6	0	0	45.9	D (Largely modified)
None	Small		Mo	derate			Large			Serio	us	Critical

REACH	ASSESSMENT DATE	INSTREAM HABITAT	RIPARIAN ZONE	IHI SCORE	CLASS
	October 2014	25.5	71.6	48.5	D (Largely modified)
DHK B1	May 2016	25.5	71.6	48.5	D (Largely modified)
	October 2014	59.9	55.4	57.7	D (Largely modified)
DHK B2	May 2016	40.9	45.9	43.4	D (Largely modified)



APPENDIX 6: IHAS Score sheets

INVERTEBRATE HABITAT ASSESSMENT						-
River Name: UNNAMED TRIB		(
Site Name: DHKB1	Date: 2	4/09/2014				
SAMPLING HABITAT STONES IN CURRENT (SIC)	0	1	2	3	4	5
Total length of white water rapids (i.e.: bubbling water) (in meters)	none	0-1	>1-2	>2-3	>3-5	>5
Total length of submerged stones in current (run) (in meters)	none	0-2	>2-5	>5-10	>10	
Number of separate SIC area's kicked (not individual stones)	0	1	2-3	4-5	6+	
A verage stone size's kicked (cm's) (gravel is <2, bedrock is >20)	none	<2>20	2-10	11-20	2-20	
A mount of stone surface clear (of algae, sediment, etc) (in %)*	n/a	0-25	26-50	51-75	>75	
PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min)	0	<1	>1-2	2	>2-3	>3
(* NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom)						
VEGETATION	SIC Sco	ore (max	20):	0	4	5
	0		<u> </u>	3	4	5
Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters)	none	0-1/2	>1/2-1	>1-2	2	>2
Amount of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters)	none	0-1/2	>1/2-1	>1		
Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only; 'run' = run only)	none		run	pool		mix
Type of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%)	none	0	1-25	26-50	51-75	>75
	Vogota	tion Sco	ro (max	15).	8	
OTHER HABITAT/GENERAL		1	2	3	4	5
Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters)	none	0-1/2	>1/2-1	1	>1	
Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones)	none	under	0-1/2	>1/2-1	1	>1
M ud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones)	none	under	0-1/2	1/2	>1/2	_
Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)**	none	0-1/2	1/2	>1/2**		_
Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)**	none	some			all**	
A lgae present: ('12m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)***	>2m²	rocks	1-2m ²	<1m²	isol	none
Tray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time) (** NOTE: you must still fill in the SIC section)		under		corr		over
		abitat So	·	,	12	
STREAM CONDITION	0	1	2	3	4	5
PHYSICAL River make up: ('pool' = pool/still/dam only; 'run' only; etc)	peol.		rup	rapid	2mix	2 min
Alver make up: (pool = pool/still/dam only; run' only; etc) A verage width of stream: (in meters)	pool	>10	run >5-10	rapid	2mix 1-2	3mix >2-5
				<1		
A verage depth of stream: (in meters) Approximate velocity of stream: ('slow' = <½m/s; 'fast' = >1m/s) (use twig to test)	>2 still	>1-2	1 fast	>1/z-1	1/2	< ¹ / ₂
Water colour: ('disc' = discoloured with visible colour but still transparent)	silty	slow	Tasi	med disc		mix
	flood	opaque	oonetr			clear
Recent disturbance due to: ('const.' = construction; 'fl/dr' = flood or drought)*** Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees)		fire	constr	other shrubs	miy	none
Bank/riparian vegetation is: (grass = includes reeds; shrubs = include trees) Surro unding impacts: ('ero sn' = ero sion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)***	none	farm	grass		mix	0.000
	erosn	51-80	trees 81-95	other		open
Left bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	0-50	51-80		>95		
Right bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %) (*** NOTE: if more than one option, choose the lowest)	0-50	J FOU	81-95	>95		
	STREA	M COND	ITIONS	TOTAL	(MAX 4	32
	TOTAL	IHAS SC	<u>ORE (%</u>	a):	52	



River Name : UNNAMED TRIB Site Name : DHK B2 SAMPLING HABITAT STONES IN CURRENT (SIC) Fotal length of white water rapids (i.e.: bubbling water) (in meters) Fotal length of submerged stones in current (run) (in meters) Number of separate SIC area's kicked (not individual stones) Average stone size's kicked (cm's) (gravel is <2, bedrock is >20) Amount of stone surface clear (of algae, sediment, etc) (in %)* PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min) * NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom) //EGETATION Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters) Amount of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters) Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only, 'run' = run only) Fype of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%) DTHER HABITAT/GENERAL Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Mud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Mud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Algae present: ('1-2m² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Fray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time) **NOTE: you must still fill in the SIC section)	0 none none none	4/09/2014 1 0-1 0-2 1 -2>20 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-2 0-25 <1 0-2 0-25 <1 0-2 0-25 <1 0-2 0-2 0-2 0-2 0-2 0-2 0-2 0-2	2 >1/21 >1/21 run 1+25	3 >2-3 >5-10 4-5 11-20 51-75 2 13 3 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12 >10 26-50 15): 3	4 >3-5 >10 6+ 2-20 >75 >2-3 2-3 2-3 5175 5175 0 4	5 >5 >3 5 >2 mix >75
STONES IN CURRENT (SIC) Fotal length of white water rapids (i.e.: bubbling water) (in meters) Fotal length of submerged stones in current (run) (in meters) Number of separate SIC area's kicked (not individual stones) Average stone size's kicked (cm's) (gravel is <2, bedrock is >20) Amount of stone surface clear (of algae, sediment, etc) (in %)* PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min) * NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom) //EGETATION Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters) Amo unt of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters) Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only, 'run' = run only) Type of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%) OTHER HABITAT/GENERAL Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) M ud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: ('ROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('1-2m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Fray identifica	none none n/a 0 n/a 0 SIC Sco 0 siC Sco 0 none none none vegetat 0 none none	0-1 0-2 1 <2>20 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 0-25 0-25 0-25 0-25 0-25 0-25 0-25 0-25 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	>12 >2-5 2-3 2-10 26-50 >1-2 20): 2 > $\frac{1}{2}$ > $\frac{1}{2}$ > $\frac{1}{2}$ > $\frac{1}{2}$ = (max $\frac{1}{2}$ 2 > $\frac{1}{2}$	>2-3 >5-10 4-5 11-20 51-75 2 13 3 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12	>3-5 >10 6+ 2-20 >75 >2-3 2-3 4 2 5175 0	>5 >3 5 >2
STONES IN CURRENT (SIC) Fotal length of white water rapids (i.e.: bubbling water) (in meters) Fotal length of submerged stones in current (run) (in meters) Number of separate SIC area's kicked (not individual stones) Average stone size's kicked (cm's) (gravel is <2, bedrock is >20) Amount of stone surface clear (of algae, sediment, etc) (in %)* PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min) * NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom) //EGETATION Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters) Amo unt of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters) Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only, 'run' = run only) Type of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%) OTHER HABITAT/GENERAL Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) M ud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: ('ROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('1-2m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Fray identifica	none none n/a 0 n/a 0 SIC Sco 0 siC Sco 0 none none none vegetat 0 none none	0-1 0-2 1 <2>20 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 0-25 0-25 0-25 0-25 0-25 0-25 0-25 0-25 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	>12 >2-5 2-3 2-10 26-50 >1-2 20): 2 > $\frac{1}{2}$ > $\frac{1}{2}$ > $\frac{1}{2}$ > $\frac{1}{2}$ = (max $\frac{1}{2}$ 2 > $\frac{1}{2}$	>2-3 >5-10 4-5 11-20 51-75 2 13 3 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12	>3-5 >10 6+ 2-20 >75 >2-3 2-3 4 2 5175 0	>5 >3 5 >2
Fotal length of white water rapids (i.e.: bubbling water) (in meters) Fotal length of submerged stones in current (run) (in meters) Number of separate SIC area's kicked (not individual stones) Average stone size's kicked (cm's) (gravel is <2, bedrock is >20) Amount of stone surface clear (of algae, sediment, etc) (in %)* PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min) * NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom) //EGETATION Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters) Amount of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters) Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only, 'run' = run only) Type of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%) DTHER HABITAT/GENERAL Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Mu d sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('1-2m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)***	none 0 none n/a 0 SIC Sco 0 SIC Sco 0 none none none vegetat 0 none none	0-2 1 <2>20 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-1/2 0-1/2 0 1 0-1/2 0-1/2 0-1/2	$\begin{array}{c c} >2-5\\ \hline 2-3\\ \hline 2-10\\ \hline 26-50\\ \hline >1-2\\ \hline \\ 20):\\ \hline 2\\ \hline \\ 20):\\ \hline 2\\ \hline \\ 2\\ \hline \\ 2\\ \hline \\ 2\\ \hline \\ e \ (max \ 7\\ \hline \\ 2\\ \hline \\ 2\\ \hline \\ >1/_{2}1\\ \hline \\ \hline \\ 2\\ \hline \\ 2\\ \hline \\ >1/_{2}1\\ \hline \end{array}$	>5-10 4-5 11-20 51-75 2 13 3 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12	>10 6+ 2-20 >75 >2-3 2-3 2-3 5175 0	5 >2 mix
Fortal length of submerged stones in current (run) (in meters) Number of separate SIC area's kicked (not individual stones) Average stone size's kicked (cm's) (gravel is <2, bedrock is >20) Amount of stone surface clear (of algae, sediment, etc) (in %)* PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min) * NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom) //EGETATION Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters) Amount of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters) Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only, 'run' = run only) Fype of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%) DTHER HABITAT/GENERAL Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Mud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)**	none 0 none n/a 0 SIC Sco 0 SIC Sco 0 none none none vegetat 0 none none	0-2 1 <2>20 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-1/2 0-1/2 0 1 0-1/2 0-1/2 0-1/2	$\begin{array}{c c} >2-5\\ \hline 2-3\\ \hline 2-10\\ \hline 26-50\\ \hline >1-2\\ \hline \\ 20):\\ \hline 2\\ \hline \\ 20):\\ \hline 2\\ \hline \\ 2\\ \hline \\ 2\\ \hline \\ 2\\ \hline \\ e \ (max \ 7\\ \hline \\ 2\\ \hline \\ 2\\ \hline \\ >1/_{2}1\\ \hline \\ \hline \\ 2\\ \hline \\ 2\\ \hline \\ >1/_{2}1\\ \hline \end{array}$	>5-10 4-5 11-20 51-75 2 13 3 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12	>10 6+ 2-20 >75 >2-3 2-3 2-3 5175 0	5 >2 mix
Average stone size's kicked (cm's) (gravel is <2, bedrock is >20) Average stone size's kicked (cm's) (gravel is <2, bedrock is >20) Amount of stone surface clear (of algae, sediment, etc) (in %)* PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min) * NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom) //EGETATION Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters) Amount of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters) Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only, 'run' = run only) Fype of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%) DTHER HABITAT/GENERAL Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Mud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('inder' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('inder' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('inder' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('inder' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('inder' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('inder' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('inder' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('inder' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('inder' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = <2)** Algae present: ('1-2m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)**** Fray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	0 none n/a 0 SIC Sco 0 none none none vegetat 0 none none	1 <2>20 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 0 0-25 0-25 0 0-25 0-25 0 0 0 0 0-25 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	2-3 2-10 26-50 >1-2 20): 2 $2^{1/2}1$ $\sqrt{2}1$ \sqrt	4-5 11-20 51-75 2 13 3 >12 >12 >12 >12 >12 26-50 15): 3	6+ 2-20 >75 >2-3 2-3 2-3 5175 0	5 >2 mix
Average stone size's kicked (cm's) (gravel is <2, bedrock is >20) Amount of stone surface clear (of algae, sediment, etc) (in %)* PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min) * NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom) //EGETATION Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters) Amount of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters) Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only; 'run' = run only) Fype of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%) DTHER HABITAT/GENERAL Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) M ud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('12m² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Fray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	none n/a 0 SIC Sco 0 none none none vegetat 0 none none	<2>20 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 <1 0-25 0-1/2 0-1/2 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 2 0 0	2-10 26-50 >1-2 20): 2 2^{1}	11-20 51-75 2 13 3 >1-2 >1 pool 26-50 15): 3	2-20 >75 >2-3 2-3 2-3 2-3 2-3 2-3 2-3 2-3 2-2-2-3 2-2-2-3 2-2-2-3 2-2-2-2 2-2-2-2 2-2-2-2 2-2-2-2 2-2-2-2 2-2-2-2 2-2-2-2 2-2-2-2 2-2-2-2 2-2-2-2 2-2-2-2 2-2-2-2 2-2-2-2-2 2-2-2-2 2-2-2-2-2 2-2-2-2-2-2 2-2-2-2-2-2-2 2-	5 >2 mix
Amount of stone surface clear (of algae, sediment, etc) (in %)* PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min) * NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom) //EGETATION Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters) Amount of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters) Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only; 'run' = run only) Type of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%) DTHER HABITAT/GENERAL Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) M ud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('1-2m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Fray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	n/a 0 SIC Sco 0 none none none vegetat 0 none none	0-25 <1 0-1/2 0-1/2 0 ion Scor 1 0-1/2	26-50 >12 20): 2 > $\frac{1}{2}$ > $\frac{1}{2}$ 7/21 125 re (max $\frac{1}{2}$ 2 > $\frac{1}{2}$	5175 2 13 3 >12 >12 >12 >1 26-50 15): 3	 >75 >2-3 2-3 2-3 5175 0 	5 >2 mix
PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min) * NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom) //EGETATION Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters) Amount of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters) Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only; 'run' = run only) Type of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%) DTHER HABITAT/GENERAL Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) M ud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('1-2m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Fray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	SIC Sco 0 none none none vegetat 0 none none	<pre (max<br="">1 0-1/2 0-1/2 0 1 0 1 0-1/2</pre>	>1-2 20): 2 >1/21 >1/21 1-25 re (max 7 2 >1/21	2 13 3 >12 >1 pool 26-50 15): 3	2-3 2-3 2 2 5175 0	5 >2 mix
* NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom) /EGETATION Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters) A mount of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters) Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only, 'run' = run only) Fype of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%) DTHER HABITAT/GENERAL Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) M ud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('1-2m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)**** Fray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	SIC Sco 0 none none none Vegetat 0 none	ore (max 1 0-1/2 0-1/2 0 ion Scor 1 0-1/2	20): 2 >1/21 >1/21 run 1-25 re (max 7 2 >1/21	13 3 >1-2 >1 pool 26-50 15): 3	4 2 5175 0	5 >2 mix
Amo unt of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters) Amo unt of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters) Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only; 'run' = run only) Type of vegetation (%leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%) DTHER HABITAT/GENERAL Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Mud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('1-2m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Fray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	0 none none none Vegetat 0 none none	1 0-1/2 0-1/2 0 ion Scor 1 0-1/2	2 $>\frac{1}{21}$ $\frac{1}{25}$ $\frac{1}{25}$ $\frac{2}{2}$ $>\frac{1}{21}$	3 >12 >1 26-50 15): 3	2 51-75	>2 mix
Amo unt of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters) Amo unt of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters) Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only; 'run' = run only) Type of vegetation (%leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%) DTHER HABITAT/GENERAL Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Mud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('1-2m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Fray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	none none none vegetat 0 none none	0-1/2 0-1/2 0 ion Scor 1 0-1/2		>12 >1 pool 26-50 15): 3	2 51-75	>2 mix
A mo unt of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters) Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only; 'run' = run only) Fype of vegetation (%leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%) OTHER HABITAT/GENERAL Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) M ud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('12m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Fray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	none none Vegetat 0 none none	0-1/2 0 ion Scor 1 0-1/2	$>\frac{1}{2}$ run 125 e (max $\frac{1}{2}$ $>\frac{1}{2}$	>1 pool 26-50 15): 3	51-75 0	mix
A mo unt of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters) Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only; 'run' = run only) Fype of vegetation (%leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%) OTHER HABITAT/GENERAL Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) M ud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('12m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Fray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	none none Vegetat 0 none none	0-1/2 0 ion Scor 1 0-1/2	$>\frac{1}{2}$ run 125 e (max $\frac{1}{2}$ $>\frac{1}{2}$	>1 pool 26-50 15): 3	51-75 0	mix
Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only; 'run' = run only) Type of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%) DTHER HABITAT/GENERAL Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) M ud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('12m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Tray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	none None Vegetat 0 none none	0 ion Scor 1	run 1+25 re (max ² 2 > ¹ / ₂ 1	pool 26-50 15): 3	0	-
Fype of vegetation (%leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%) FTHER HABITAT/GENERAL Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) M ud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)**	none Vegetat 0 none none	ion Scor 1 0-½	1-25 • (max * 2 > ¹ / ₂ -1	26-50 15): 3	0	-
Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Mud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('12m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Fray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	0 none none	1 0-½	2 >½1	3	0 4	
Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters) Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Mud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('12m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Fray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	none	0-1/2	>1/2-1		4	
Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) M ud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('1-2m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Fray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	none	=		1		5
M ud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones) Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('12m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Tray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)		under	0-14		>1	
Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)** Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('12m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Tray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	none		0-72	>1/2-1	1	>1
Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)** Algae present: ('1-2m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Fray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)		under	0-1⁄2	1/2	>1⁄2	
Algae present: ('12m² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)*** Tray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	none	0-1/2	1/2	>1/2**		
ray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	none	some			all**	
	>2m²	rocks	1-2m ²	<1m²	isol	none
** NOTE: you must still fill in the SIC section)		under		corr		over
	Other H	abitat So	core (ma	ax 20):	14	
	HABITA	<u>Τ ΤΟΤΑ</u>	L (MAX	55):	27	
STREAM CONDITION	0	1	2	3	4	5
PHYSICAL						
River make up: ('pool' = pool/still/dam only; 'run' only; etc)	pool		run	rapid	2mix	3mix
Average width of stream: (in meters)		>10	>5-10	<1	1-2	>2-5
Average depth of stream: (in meters)	>2	>1-2	1	>1/21	1/2	<1/2
Approximate velocity of stream: ('slow' = <1/am/s; 'fast' = >1m/s) (use twig to test)	still	slow	fast	med		mix
Nater colour: ('disc' = discoloured with visible colour but still transparent)	silty	opaque		disc		clea
Recent disturbance due to: ('const.' = construction; 'fl/dr' = flood or drought)***	flood	fire	constr	other		none
3 ank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds, 'shrubs' = include trees)	none		grass	shrubs	mix	
Surrounding impacts: ('erosn' = erosion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)***	erosn	farm	trees	other		oper
Left bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	0-50	51-80	81-95	>95		
Right bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	0-50	51-80	81-95	>95		
*** NOTE: if more than one option, choose the lowest)						
		M COND	ITIONS	TOTAL	(MAX	32
	STREA					



	T SYSTER					
River Name : KLEIN MARICO Site Name : DHKB3	Date 2	4/09/2014				
	2 410 1 2					
SAMPLING HABITAT	0	1	2	3	4	5
STONES IN CURRENT (SIC) Total length of white water rapids (i.e.: bubbling water) (in meters)	none	0-1	>1-2	>2-3	>3-5	>5
Fotal length of submerged stones in current (run) (in meters)	none	0-2	>2-5	>5-10	>10	
Number of separate SIC area's kicked (not individual stones)	0	1	2-3	<u>∽3-10</u> 4-5	6+	
Average stone size's kicked (cm's) (gravel is <2, bedrock is >20)	none	<2>20	2-10	11-20	2-20	
Amount of stone surface clear (of algae, sediment, etc) (in %)*	n/a	0-25	26-50	51-75	>75	-
	0	<1		2	>2-3	
PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min) *NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom)	0	<1	>1-2	2	>2-3	>3
	SIC Sco	ore (max	20):	11		
VEGETATION	0	1	2	3	4	5
_ength of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters)	none	0-1⁄2	>½1	>1-2	2	>2
Amount of aquatic vegetation sampled (inderwater) (in square meters)	none	0-1/2	>1/21	>1	Ħ	
Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only; 'run' = run only)	none	0 /2	run	pool	H	mi
Type of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%)	none	0	1-25	26-50	51-75	>7
ype of vogetation (vincary vog. 713 opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. vog. omy – 45 /6	lione	Ŭ	120	20 00	0170	
		ion Scor			11	-
OTHER HABITAT/GENERAL	0	1	2	3	4	5
Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters)	none	0-1/2	>1/2-1	1	>1	
Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones)	none	under	0-1/2	>1/21	1	>
Mud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones)	none	under	0-1/2	1/2	>1/2	
Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)**	none	0-1/2	1/2	>1/2**		
Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size =>20)**	none	some	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	- 12	all**	
Algae present: ('12m² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)***	>2m ²	rocks	1-2m ²	<1m²	isol	non
Fray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	72m	under		corr		ove
** NOTE: you must still fill in the SIC section)		under		CON		0.00
		abitat So AT TOTA			13 35	
STREAM CONDITION	0	1	2	3	4	5
PHYSICAL River make up: ('pool' = pool/still/dam only; 'run' only; etc)	pool		rup	rapid	2mix	3m
Average width of stream: (in meters)	pool	>10	run >5-10	-1apid	1-2	>2-
	>2	>10	>5-10	<1 >1/z1	FZ	>2- <1/
Average depth of stream: (in meters)	still		fast	med	/2	</td
Average depth of stream: (in meters)		slow	idst			clea
Approximate velocity of stream: ('slow' = <1/2m/s; 'fast' = >1m/s) (use twig to test)		0000000		disc		-
Approximate velocity of stream: ('slow' = <½m/s; 'fast' = >1m/s) (use twig to test) Nater colour: ('disc' = discoloured with visible colour but still transparent)	silty	opaque	oc note	other.		nor
Approximate velocity of stream: ('slow' = <1/2m/s; 'fast' = >1m/s) (use twig to test) Nater colour: ('disc' = discoloured with visible colour but still transparent) Recent disturbance due to: ('const.' = construction; 'fl/dr' = flood or drought)***	silty	opaque fire	constr	other		
Approximate velocity of stream: ('slow' = <1/am/s; 'fast' = >1m/s) (use twig to test) Water colour: ('disc' = discoloured with visible colour but still transparent) Recent disturbance due to: ('const.' = construction; 'fl/dr' = flood or drought)*** Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees)	silty flood none	fire	grass	shrubs	mix	
Approximate velocity of stream: ('slow' = <1/am/s; 'fast' = >1m/s) (use twig to test) Water colour: ('disc' = discoloured with visible colour but still transparent) Recent disturbance due to: ('const.' = construction; 'fl/dr' = flood or drought)*** Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees) Surrounding impacts: ('erosn' = erosion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)***	silty flood none erosn	fire farm	grass trees	shrubs other	mix	оре
Approximate velocity of stream: ('slow' = <1/2m/s; 'fast' = >1m/s) (use twig to test) Water colour: ('disc' = discoloured with visible colour but still transparent) Recent disturbance due to: ('const.' = construction; 'fl/dr' = flood or drought)*** Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees) Surrounding impacts: ('erosn' = erosion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)*** Left bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	silty flood none erosn 0-50	fire farm 51-80	grass trees 81-95	shrubs other >95	mix	ope
Approximate velocity of stream: ('slow' = <1/am/s; 'fast' = >1m/s) (use twig to test) Water colour: ('disc' = discoloured with visible colour but still transparent) Recent disturbance due to: ('const.' = construction; 'fl/dr' = flood or drought)*** Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees) Surrounding impacts: ('erosn' = erosion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)***	silty flood none erosn	fire farm	grass trees	shrubs other	mix mix	ope
Approximate velocity of stream: ('slow' = <1/2m/s; 'fast' = >1m/s) (use twig to test) Water colour: ('disc' = discoloured with visible colour but still transparent) Recent disturbance due to: ('const.' = construction; 'fl/dr' = flood or drought)*** Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees) Surrounding impacts: ('erosn' = erosion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)*** Left bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %) Right bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	silty flood none erosn 0-50 0-50	fire farm 51-80	grass trees 81-95 81-95	shrubs other >95 >95		



INVERTEBRATE HABITAT ASSESSMEN	TSYSTE	/ (IHAS)				
River Name: KLEIN MARICO						
Site Name: DHKB4	Date: 2	4/09/2014				
SAMPLING HABITAT	0	1	2	3	4	5
STONES IN CURRENT (SIC)						
Total length of white water rapids (i.e.: bubbling water) (in meters)	none	0-1	>1-2	>2-3	>3-5	>5
Total length of submerged stones in current (run) (in meters)	none	0-2	>2-5	>5-10	>10	
Number of separate SIC area's kicked (not individual stones)	0	1	2-3	4-5	6+	
Average stone size's kicked (cm's) (gravel is <2, bedrock is >20)	none	<2>20	2-10	11-20	2-20	
Amount of stone surface clear (of algae, sediment, etc) (in %)*	n/a	0-25	26-50	51-75	>75	
PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min) (* NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom)	0	<1	>1-2	2	>2-3	>3
	SIC Sci	ore (max	201.	13		
VEGETATION	0	1	20).	3	4	5
Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters)	none	0-1/2	>1/21	>12	2	>2
Amount of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters)	none	0-1/2	>1/21	>1		~~
Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only; 'run' = run only)	none	0-72	run	pool		mix
Type of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%)	none	0	1-25	26-50	51-75	>75
Type of vegetation (wheaty veg. As opposed to stems/should) (aq. veg. only = 43%	none	0	F25	20-50	5 - 7 5	>15
	Vegeta	tion Sco	re (max	15):	10	
OTHER HABITAT/GENERAL	0	1	2	3	4	5
Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters)	none	0-1/2	>1/2-1	1	>1	
Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones)	none	under	0-1/2	>½1	1	>1
Mud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones)	none	under	0-1/2	1/2	>1/2	
Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)**	none	0-1/2	1/2	>1/2**		
Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)**	none	some			all**	
Algae present: ('1-2m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)***	>2m ²	rocks	1-2m ²	<1m²	isol	none
Tray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)	7 Em	under		corr	1001	over
** NOTE: you must still fill in the SIC section)						0.101
		abitat S	·		5 28	
STREAM CONDITION	0	1	2	3	4	5
PHYSICAL River make up: ('pool' = pool/still/dam only; 'run' only; etc)	pool		run	rapid	2mix	3mix
Average width of stream: (in meters)	2001	>10	>5-10	<1	1-2	>2-5
Average depth of stream: (in meters)	>2	>1-2	1	>1/21	1/2	<1/2
A verage depth of stream: (in meters) Approximate velocity of stream: (islow' = $\frac{1}{2}$ m/s; 'fast' = >1m/s) (use twig to test)	still	slow	fast	med	/2	mix
Water colour: ('disc' = discoloured with visible colour but still transparent)	silty	opaque	1451	disc	H	clear
Recent disturbance due to: ('const.' = construction; 'fl/dr' = flood or drought)***	flood	fire	constr	other		none
		1116			miv	TIOTIC
Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees)	none	form	grass	shrubs	mix	0.707
Surro unding impacts: ('erosn' = erosion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)***	erosn	farm	trees	other		oper
Left bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	0-50	51-80	81-95	>95		
Right bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %) (*** NOTE: if more than one option, choose the lowest)	0-50	51-80	81-95	>95		
	STREA	M COND	ITIONS	TOTAL		29
		IHAS SC		0.	57	



INVERTEBRATE HABITAT ASSESSMENT	SYSTE	(IHAS)				
River Name: KLEIN MARICO						
Site Name: DHKB5	Date: 2	4/09/2014				
SAMPLING HABITAT	0	1	2	3	4	5
STONES IN CURRENT (SIC)						
Total length of white water rapids (i.e.: bubbling water) (in meters)	none	0-1	>1-2	>2-3	>3-5	>5
Total length of submerged stones in current (run) (in meters)	none	0-2	>2-5	>5-10	>10	
Number of separate SIC area's kicked (not individual stones)	0	1	2-3	4-5	6+	
Average stone size's kicked (cm's) (gravel is <2, bedrock is >20)	none	<2>20	2-10	11-20	2-20	
Amount of stone surface clear (of algae, sediment, etc) (in %)*	n/a	0-25	26-50	51-75	>75	
PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min)	0	<1	>1-2	2	>2-3	>3
(*NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom)						
		ore (max		0		
VEGETATION	0	1	2	3	4	5
Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters)	none	0-1⁄2	>1/2-1	>1-2	2	>2
Amount of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters)	none	0-1/2	>1/2-1	>1		
Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only; 'run' = run only)	none		run	pool		mix
Type of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%)	none	0	1-25	26-50	51-75	>75
OTHER HABITAT/GENERAL	Vegetat 0	ion Sco 1	re (max	<u>15):</u>	10	5
	Ů		-	Ű		Ŭ
Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters)	none	0-1⁄2	>½1	1	>1	
Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones)	none	under	0-1/2	>1/21	1	>1
N ud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones)	none	under	0-1/2	1/2	>1⁄2	
Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)**	none	0-1/2	1/2	>1/2**		
Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)**	none	some			all**	
A lgae present: ('12m² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)***	>2m²	rocks	1-2m ²	<1m²	isol	none
Tray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)		under		corr		ove
(** NOTE: you must still fill in the SIC section)						
	Other H	abitat S	core (ma	ax 20):	10	
	HABIT	<u>ΑΤ ΤΟΤΑ</u>	L (MAX	(55):	20	
STREAM CONDITION PHYSICAL	0	1	2	3	4	5
River make up: ('pool' = pool/still/dam only; 'run' only; etc)	pool		run	rapid	2mix	3mix
Average width of stream: (in meters)		>10	>5-10	<1	1-2	>2-5
Average depth of stream: (in meters)	>2	>1-2	1	>1/21	1/2	<1/2
Approximate velocity of stream: ('slow' = <1/am/s; 'fast' = >1m/s) (use twig to test)	still	slow	fast	med		mix
Nater colour: ('disc' = discoloured with visible colour but still transparent)	silty	opaque		disc		clea
Recent disturbance due to: ('const.' = construction; 'fl/dr' = flood or drought)***	flood	fire	constr	other		none
Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees)	none		grass	shrubs	mix	
Surrounding impacts: ('erosn' = erosion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)***	erosn	farm	trees	other		ope
_eft bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	0-50	51-80	81-95	>95		
Right bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	0-50	51-80	81-95	>95		
*** NOTE: if more than one option, choose the lowest)						
	STREA	M COND	ITIONS	TOTAL	(MAX	34
	TOTAL	IHAS SC	ORE (%	6):	54	



INVERTEBRATE HABITAT ASSESSMENT	SYSTE	(IHAS)				
River Name:						
Site Name: DHKB1	Date: 2	7/05/2016				
SAMPLING HABITAT	0	1	2	3	4	5
STONES IN CURRENT (SIC) Total length of white water rapids (i.e.: bubbling water) (in meters)	none	0-1	>1-2	>2-3	>3-5	>5
Total length of submerged stones in current (run) (in meters)	none	0-2	>2-5	>5-10	>10	~
Number of separate SIC area's kicked (not individual stones)	0	1	2-3	4-5	6+	
Average stone size's kicked (cm's) (gravel is <2, bedrock is >20)	none	<2>20	2-10	11-20	2-20	
Amount of stone surface clear (of algae, sediment, etc) (in %)*	n/a	0-25	26-50	51-75	>75	
PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min)	0	<1	>1-2	2	>2-3	>3
(*NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom)				2	72.0	20
	SIC Sco	ore (max	20):	8		
VEGETATION	0	1	2	3	4	5
Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters)	none	0-1/2	>½1	>1-2	2	>2
Amount of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters)	none	0-1/2	>½1	>1		
Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only; 'run' = run only)	none		run	pool		mix
Type of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%)	none	0	1-25	26-50	51-75	>75
			•			
OTHER HABITAT/GENERAL	Vegetat 0	ion Scor	e (max	15): 3	9 4	5
UTHER HABITAT/GENERAL	0		2	3	4	5
Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters)	none	0-1⁄2	>1/ 2 1	1	>1	
Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones)	none	under	0-1/2	>1/21	1	>1
M ud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones)	none	under	0-1/2	1/2	>1⁄2	
Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)**	none	0-1/2	1/2	>1/2**		
Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)**	none	some			all**	
Algae present: ('1-2m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)***	>2m²	rocks	1-2m ²	<1m²	isol	none
Tray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)		under		corr		over
(** NOTE: you must still fill in the SIC section)						
	Other H	abitat So	core (ma	ax 20):	13	
	HABIT	<u>ΑΤ ΤΟΤΑ</u>	L (MAX	55):	30	
STREAM CONDITION	0	1	2	3	4	5
PHYSICAL River make up: ('pool' = pool/still/dam only; 'run' only; etc)	pool		run	rapid	2mix	3mix
Average width of stream: (in meters)	poor	>10	>5-10	<1	1-2	>2-5
Average would of stream: (in meters)	>2	>1-2	1	>1/21	FZ 1/2	<1/2
Average depth of stream: (in meters) Approximate velocity of stream: ('slow' = <½m/s; 'fast' = >1m/s) (use twig to test)	still	slow	fast	med	/2	2<br mix
Water colour: ('disc' = discoloured with visible colour but still transparent)	silty		iasi	disc		clear
Recent disturbance due to: ('const.' = construction; 'fl/dr' = flood or drought)***	flood	opaque	constr			-
		fire		other	miv	none
Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees)	none	form	grass	shrubs	mix	0.000
Surrounding impacts: ('erosn' = erosion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)***	erosn	farm	trees	other		oper
Left bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	0-50	51-80	81-95	>95		
Right bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %) (*** NOTE: if more than one option, choose the lowest)	0-50	51-80	81-95	>95		
	STREA	M COND	ITIONS	TOTAL	(MAX4	42
	TOTAL	IHAS SC	ORE (%	6): 	72	



River Name:		A (IHAS)				
Site Name: DHKB2	Date: 2	26/05/2016				
SAMPLING HABITAT	0	1	2	3	4	5
STONES IN CURRENT (SIC) Total length of white water rapids (i.e.: bubbling water) (in meters)		0-1	>1-2	>2-3	>3-5	
Total length of submerged stones in current (run) (in meters)	none	0-1	>2-5	>2-3	>3-5	>5
Number of separate SIC area's kicked (not individual stones)	0	1	2-3	4-5	6+	
Average stone size's kicked (cm's) (gravel is <2, bedrock is >20)	none	<2>20	2-3	11-20	2-20	
Amount of stone surface clear (of algae, sediment, etc) (in %)*	n/a	0-25	26-50	51-75	>75	
PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min)	0	<1	>1-2	2	>2-3	>3
(*NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom)			>=2	2	>2-5	20
	SIC Sco	ore (max	20):	0		
VEGETATION	0	1	2	3	4	5
Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters)	none	0-1/2	>½1	>1-2	2	>2
Amount of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters)	none	0-1/2	>1/21	>1		
Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only; 'run' = run only)	none		run	pool		mix
Type of vegetation (%leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (ag. Veg. Only = 49%)	none	0	1-25	26-50	51-75	>75
		tion Scor			7	
OTHER HABITAT/GENERAL	0	1	2	3	4	5
Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters)	none	0-1⁄2	>1/2-1	1	>1	
Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones)	none	under	0-1⁄2	>1/2-1	1	>1
Mud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones)	none	under	0-1⁄2	1/2	>1⁄2	
Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)**	none	0-1⁄2	1/2	>1/2**		
Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)**	none	some			all**	
Algae present: ('1-2m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)***	>2m²	rocks	1-2m ²	<1m²	isol	none
Tray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time)		under		corr		over
(** NOTE: you must still fill in the SIC section)						
		abitat So	•		11 18	
STREAM CONDITION	0	1	2	3	4	5
PHYSICAL					0	0
River make up: ('pool' = pool/still/dam only; 'run' only; etc)	pool	. 40	run	rapid	2mix	3mix
Average width of stream: (in meters)		>10	>5-10	<1	1-2	>2-5
Average depth of stream: (in meters)	>2	>1-2	1	>1/21	1/2	<1/2
Approximate velocity of stream: ('slow' = <1/m/s, 'fast' = >1m/s) (use twig to test)	still	slow	fast	med		mix
Water colour: ('disc' = discoloured with visible colour but still transparent)	silty	opaque		disc		clea
	flood	fire	constr	other		none
			grass	shrubs	mix	
Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees)	none	F, T				
Recent disturbance due to: ('const.' = construction; 'fl/dr' = flood or drought)*** Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees) Surrounding impacts: ('erosn' = erosion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)***	erosn	farm	trees	other		oper
Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees) Surrounding impacts: ('erosn' = erosion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)*** Left bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	erosn 0-50	51-80	81-95	>95		oper
Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees) Surrounding impacts: ('erosn' = erosion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)*** Left bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %) Right bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	erosn					oper
Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees) Surrounding impacts: ('erosn' = erosion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)*** Left bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	erosn 0-50	51-80	81-95	>95		
Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees) Surrounding impacts: ('erosn' = erosion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)*** Left bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %) Right bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	erosn 0-50 0-50	51-80 51-80	81-95 81-95	>95 >95		
Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees) Surrounding impacts: ('erosn' = erosion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)*** Left bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %) Right bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	erosn 0-50 0-50	51-80	81-95 81-95	>95 >95		



Date: 2 0 none 0 none n/a 0	6/05/2016 1 0-1 0-2 1 <2>20	2 >1-2 >2-5	3 >2-3	4	5
0nonenone0nonen/a	1 0-1 0-2 1	>1-2 >2-5			5
none none 0 none n/a	0-1 0-2 1	>1-2 >2-5			5
none 0 none n/a	0-2	>2-5	>2-3		
none 0 none n/a	0-2	>2-5	>2-3	1 0 5	
0 none n/a	1			>3-5	>5
none n/a			>5-10	>10	
n/a		2-3	4-5	6+	
		2-10	11-20	2-20	
	0-25	26-50	51-75	>75	
U	<1	>1-2	2	>2-3	>3
SIC Sco	ore (max	20):	0	<u> </u>	
0	1	2	3	4	5
none	0-1⁄2	>½1	>1-2	2	>2
none	0-1/2	>1/21	>1		
		run	pool		mix
	0	1-25		51-75	>75
					_
				13	1 6
0	1	2	3	4	5
none	0-1/2	>½1	1	>1	
none	under	0-1⁄2	>½1	1	>1
none	under	0-1⁄2	1/2	>1⁄2	_
none	0-1/2	1/2	>1/2**		
none	some			all**	
>2m ²	rocks	1-2m ²	<1m²	isol	none
	under		corr		over
0	1	2	3	4	5
pool		run	rapid	2mix	3mix
2001	>10				>2-5
>2					<1/2
				12	mix
		1401			clea
		constr			none
	1.10			mix	
	farm				oper
0-50	5 -80	0190	>90		
STREA	M COND	ITIONS	TOTAL	MAX	33
	0 none none none vegetat 0 none none none none >2m ² Other H	0 1 none 0-½ none 0-½ none 0 none 0-½ none 0-½ none under none 0-½ none 0 >2m² rocks none 1 pool 1 pool 1 pool >10 >2 >12 still slow silty opaque	none 0-½ >½1 none 0-½ >½1 none 0 125 Vegetation Score (max 0 125 Vegetation Score (max 0 1 2 none 0 1 2 none 0-½ >½1 none 0-½ >½1 none 0-½ >½1 none 0-½ >½1 none 0-½ ½ none 0-½ ½ none 0-½ ½ none 0-½ ½ none Some 1 >2m² rocks 1-2m² Other Habitat Score (max 1 1 O 1 2 pool runder 1 >2 >10 >5-10 >2 >12 1 still Slow fast silty opaque 1 flood fire con	0 1 2 3 none $0-\frac{1}{2}$ $>\frac{1}{2}$ 1 >12 none $0-\frac{1}{2}$ $>\frac{1}{2}$ 1 >12 none $0-\frac{1}{2}$ $>\frac{1}{2}$ 1 >11 none 0 125 $26-50$ Vegetation Score (max 15): 0 1 2 3 none $0-\frac{1}{2}$ $>\frac{1}{2}$ 1 1 none $0-\frac{1}{2}$ $>\frac{1}{2}$ 1 1 none $0-\frac{1}{2}$ $>\frac{1}{2}$ 3 none $0-\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ none $0-\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ none $0-\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ none $0-\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{3}{2}$ other Habitat Score (max 20): $HABITAT TOTAL (MAX 55):$ 0 1 2 3 pool run rapid >10 >5-10 <1	0 1 2 3 4 none $0.\frac{1}{2}$ $>\frac{1}{2}$ $>\frac{1}{2}$ 2 none $0.\frac{1}{2}$ $>\frac{1}{2}$ >1 1 none $0.\frac{1}{2}$ $>\frac{1}{2}$ 2 none 0 1.25 26.50 51.75 Vegetation Score (max 15): 13 0 1 2 3 4 none $0.\frac{1}{2}$ $3\frac{4}{2}$ 1 >1 >1 none $0.\frac{1}{2}$ $3\frac{4}{2}$ 1 >1 >1 none $0.\frac{1}{2}$ $3\frac{4}{2}$ $\frac{3}{2}$ 1 1 >1 none $0.\frac{1}{2}$ $3\frac{4}{2}$ $\frac{3}{2}$ $\frac{3}{$



River Name :						
Site Name: DHKB4	Date: 2	26/05/2016				
SAM PLING HABITAT	0	1	2	3	4	5
STONES IN CURRENT (SIC)						
Total length of white water rapids (i.e.: bubbling water) (in meters)	none	0-1	>1-2	>2-3	>3-5	>5
Total length of submerged stones in current (run) (in meters)	none	0-2	>2-5	>5-10	>10	
Number of separate SIC area's kicked (not individual stones)	0	1	2-3	4-5	6+	
Average stone size's kicked (cm's) (gravel is <2, bedrock is >20)	none	<2>20	2-10	11-20	2-20	
Amount of stone surface clear (of algae, sediment, etc) (in %)*	n/a	0-25	26-50	51-75	>75	
PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min) (*NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom)	0	<1	>1-2	2	>2-3	>3
	SIC Sco	ore (max	20):	0		
VEGETATION	0	1	2	3	4	5
Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters)	none	0-1/2	>½1	>1-2	2	>2
Amount of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters)	none	0-1/2	>1/21	>1	É	
Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only, 'run' = run only)	none	0-72	run	pool		mix
Type of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (ag. Veg. Only = 49%)	none	0	1-25	26-50	51-75	>75
Type of vegetation (viewally veg. As opposed to stems should (aq. veg. only $= 43.0$)	none	U	F2J	20-30	JF73	215
		tion Sco			9	
OTHER HABITAT/GENERAL	0	1	2	3	4	5
Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters)	none	0-1/2	>1/2-1	1	>1	
Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones)	none	under	0-1/2	>1/2-1	1	>1
Mud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones)	none	under	0-1/2	1/2	>1/2	
Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)**	none	0-1/2	1/2	>1/2**		
Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)**	none	some			all**	
Algae present: ('12m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)***	>2m ²	rocks	1-2m ²	<1m²	isol	none
Tray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time) (** NOTE: you must still fill in the SIC section)		under		corr		over
		labitat S AT TOTA	·		11	
STREAM CONDITION	0	1	2	3	4	5
PHYSICAL			run	ranid	2miv	200
River make up: ('pool' = pool/still/dam only; 'run' only; etc)	pool	>10	run >5-10	rapid	2mix 1-2	3mix
A verage width of stream: (in meters)		>12	>5-10	<1	FZ 1/2	>2-0
A verage depth of stream: (in meters)	>2			>1/21	/2	<1/2
Approximate velocity of stream: ('slow' = $; 'fast' = >1m/s) (use twig to test)$	still	slow	fast	med		mix
Water colour: ('disc' = discoloured with visible colour but still transparent)	silty	opaque		disc		clear
Recent disturbance due to: ('const.' = construction; 'fl/dr' = flood or drought)***	flood	fire	constr	other	and the second	none
Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees)	none		grass	shrubs	mix	
Surrounding impacts: ('erosn' = erosion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)***	erosn	farm	trees	other		open
Left bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	0-50	51-80	81-95	>95		
Right bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	0-50	51-80	81-95	>95		
(*** NOTE: if more than one option, choose the lowest)						4
	STDEA	MCONT		TOTAL	MAY	24
	STREA	M COND	ITIONS	TOTAL (MAX	24



INVERTEBRATE HABITAT ASSESSMENT	T SYSTEM	/I(IHAS)				_
River Name:						
Site Name: DHKK4	Date: 2	6/05/2016				
SAMPLING HABITAT	0	1	2	3	4	5
STONES IN CURRENT (SIC) Total length of white water rapids (i.e.: bubbling water) (in meters)	none	0-1	>1-2	>2-3	>3-5	>5
Total length of submerged stones in current (run) (in meters)	none	0-1	>2-5	>5-10	>10	>5
Number of separate SIC area's kicked (not individual stones)	0	1	2-3	4-5	6+	_
Average stone size's kicked (cm's) (gravel is <2, bedrock is >20)	none	<2>20	2-10	11-20	2-20	-
Amount of stone surface clear (of algae, sediment, etc) (in %)*	n/a	0-25	26-50	51-75	>75	
PROTOCOL: time spent actually kicking stones (in minutes) (gravel/bedrock = 0 min)	0	<1	>1-2	2	>2-3	>3
(* NOTE: up to 25% of stone is usually embedded in the stream bottom)		<1	>FZ	2	>2-3	>3
	SIC C.		20).			
VEGETATION		ore (max	20):	0	4	5
Length of fringing vegetation sampled (river banks) (PROTOCOL - in meters)	none	0-1/2	>1/21	>1-2	2	>2
Amount of aquatic vegetation sampled (underwater) (in square meters)	none	0-1⁄2	>½1	>1		
Fringing vegetation sampled in: ('still' = pool/still water only; 'run' = run only)	none		run	pool		mix
Type of vegetation (% leafy veg. As opposed to stems/shoots) (aq. Veg. Only = 49%)	none	0	1-25	26-50	51-75	>75
	Vegetat	ion Scor	e (max	15):	8	
OTHER HABITAT/GENERAL	0	1	2	3	4	5
		0.1/	. 1/ 4		. 1	
Stones out of current (SOOC) sampled: (PROTOCOL - in square meters)	none	0-1/2	>1/21	1	>1	
Sand sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones)	none	under	0-1/2	>1/2-1	1	>1
Mud sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) ('under' = present, but only under stones)	none	under	0-1/2	1/2	>1⁄2	
Gravel sampled: (PROTOCOL - in minutes) (if all gravel, SIC stone size = <2)**	none	0-1/2	1/2	>1/2**		
Bedrock sampled: ('all' = no SIC, sand, or gravel then SIC stone size = >20)**	none	some			all**	
A Igae present: ('1-2m ² = algal bed; 'rocks' = on rocks; 'isol' = isolated clumps)***	>2m²	rocks	1-2m ²	<1m²	isol	none
Tray identification: (PROTOCOL - using time: 'coor' = correct time) (** NOTE: you must still fill in the SIC section)		under		corr		over
	Other H	abitat So	core (ma	ax 20):	15	
	HABITA	<u> 1 ТОТА</u>	L(MAX	55):	23	1
STREAM CONDITION	0	1	2	3	4	5
PHYSICAL						
River make up: ('pool' = pool/still/dam only; 'run' only; etc)	pool		run	rapid	2mix	3mix
Average width of stream: (in meters)		>10	>5-10	<1	1-2	>2-5
Average depth of stream: (in meters)	>2	>1-2	1	>½1	1/2	<1/2
Approximate velocity of stream: ('slow' = <1/2m/s; 'fast' = >1m/s) (use twig to test)	still	slow	fast	med		mix
Water colour: ('disc' = discoloured with visible colour but still transparent)	silty	opaque		disc		clea
Recent disturbance due to: ('const.' = construction; 'fl/dr' = flood or drought)***	flood	fire	constr	other		none
Bank/riparian vegetation is: ('grass' = includes reeds; 'shrubs' = include trees)	none		grass	shrubs	mix	
Surrounding impacts: ('erosn' = erosion/shear bank; 'farm' = farmland/settlement)***	erosn	farm	trees	other		oper
Left bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	0-50	51-80	81-95	>95		
Right bank cover: (rocks and vegetation) (in %)	0-50	51-80	81-95	>95		
	11 1					
(*** NOTE: if more than one option, choose the lowest)						
	STREA		TIONS	ΤΟΤΔΙ	MAY	37
	STREA	M COND	ITIONS	TOTAL	MAX	37



APPENDIX 7: SASS5 Score sheets

			RIVEF	R HEA	LTH P	ROGR	AMME - SASS 5 SCORE SH	HEET	Г									
DATE: 24/09/2014	TAXON		S	٧G	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	٧G	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот
GRID REFERENCE:	PORIFERA	5					HEM IPTERA:						DIPTERA:					
S:°	COELENTERATA	1					Belostomatidae*	3					Athericidae	10				
E:°	TURBELLARIA	3					Corixidae*	3					Blepharoceridae	15				
SITE CODE: DHK B1	ANNELIDA:						Gerridae*	5		Α	Α	Α	Ceratopogonidae	5				
RIVER: UNNAMED TRIB	Oligo chaeta	1					Hydrometridae*	6					Chiro no midae	2		Α	Α	Α
SITE DESCRIPTION: SPRING SOURCE	Leeches	3					Naucoridae*	7					Culicidae*	1				
WEATHER CONDITION: WARM DRY	CRUSTACEA:						Nepidae*	3					Dixidae*	10				
TEMP: 21.7 °C	Amphipoda	13					Notonectidae*	3		Α	Α	В	Empididae	6				
Ph: 7.53	Potamonautidae*	3					Pleidae*	4					Ephydridae	3				
DO: 7.45 mg/l	Atyidae	8		В	Α	В	Veliidae/Mveliidae*	5		Α		Α	Muscidae	1				
Cond: 453 mS/m	Palaemonidae	10					MEGALOPTERA:						Psychodidae	1				
BIOTOPES SAMPLED:	HYDRACARINA	8					Cordalidae	8					Simuliidae	5				
SIC: TIME: minutes	PLECOPTERA:						Sialidae	6					Syrphidae*	1				
SOOC:	Notonemouridae	14					TRICHOPTERA						Tabanidae	5				
BEDROCK:	Perlidae	12					Dipseudopsidae	10					Tipulidae	5				
AQUATIC VEG: DOM SP:	EPHEMEROPTERA						Ecnomidae	8					GASTROPODA					
M VEG IC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 1sp	4		1		1	Hydropsychidae 1sp	4					Ancylidae	6				
M VEG OOC: 2 DOM SP:	Baetidae 2 sp	6					Hydropsychidae 2 sp	6					Bulininae*	3				
GRAVEL:	Baetidae >2 sp	12					Hydropsychidae >2 sp	12					Hydro biidae*	3				
SAND:	Caenidae	6					Philopotamidae	10					Lymnaeidae*	3				
M UD: 2	Ephemeridae	15					Polycentropodidae	12					Physidae*	3				
HAND PICKING/VISUAL OBS:	Heptageniidae	13					Psychomyiidae/Xiphocen.	8					Plano rbidae*	3				
FLOW: LOW	Leptophlebiidae	9					CASED CADDIS:						Thiaridae*	3				
TURBIDITY: LOW	Oligoneuridae	15					Barbarochthonidae SWC	13					Viviparidae* ST	5				
RIPARIAN LAND USE:	Polymitarcyidae	10					Calamo ceratidae ST	11					PELECYPODA					
	Prosopistomatidae	15					Glossosomatidae SWC	11					Corbiculidae	5				
	Teloganodidae SWC	12					Hydroptilidae	6					Sphaeriidae	3				
	Tricorythidae	9					Hydro salpingidae SWC	15					Unionidae	6				
	ODONATA:						Lepidostomatidae	10					SASS SCORE:		0	27	23	32
DISTURBANCE IN RIVER:	Calopterygidae ST,T	10					Leptoceridae	6					NO OF TAXA:		0	6	5	7
	Chlorocyphidae	10					Petrothrincidae SWC	11					ASPT:		0	4.5	5	4.6
	Chlorolestidae	8					Pisuliidae	10					IHAS:	5	2%			
	Coenagrionidae	4					Sericostomatidae SWC	13					OTHER BIOTA:					
	Lestidae	8					COLEOPTERA:											
SIGNS OF POLLUTION:	Platycnemidae	10					Dytiscidae*	5					COMMENTS					
	Protoneuridae	8					Elmidae/Dryopidae*	8					* = airbreathers					
	Zygoptera juvs.	6					Gyrinidae*	5			1	1	SWC = South Wester	n Car	e			
	Aeshnidae	8			1		Halipidae*	5			1		T = Tropical					
	Corduliidae	8				İ 🗌	Helodidae	12					ST = Sub-tropical					
OTHER OBSERVATIONS:	Gomphidae	6					Hydraenidae*	8					S = Stone & rock					
	Libellulidae	4			1		Hydrophilidae*	5					VG = all vegetation					
	LEPIDOPTERA:				1		Limnichidae	10					GSM = gravel, sand 8	mud				
	Pyralidae	12			1		Psephenidae	10	I	l			1=1, A=2-10, B=10-100,			D=>10	00	

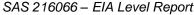


			RIVE				AMME - SASS 5 SCORE SH	HEET	Г									
DATE: 24/09/2014	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот
GRID REFERENCE:	PORIFERA	5					HEMIPTERA:						DIPTERA:					
S:°	COELENTERATA	1					Belostomatidae*	3					Athericidae	10				
E:°	TURBELLARIA	3					Corixidae*	3					B lepharo ceridae	15				
SITE CODE: DHK B2	ANNELIDA:						Gerridae*	5					Ceratopogonidae	5				
RIVER: UNNAMED TRIB	Oligochaeta	1					Hydrometridae*	6					Chironomidae	2				
SITE DESCRIPTION: D/S NEAR CONT	Leeches	3					Naucoridae*	7					Culicidae*	1			1	1
WEATHER CONDITION: WARM/DRY	CRUSTACEA:						Nepidae*	3					Dixidae*	10				
TEMP:17.5 °C	Amphipoda	13					Notonectidae*	3					Empididae	6				
Ph: 7.92	Potamonautidae*	3	1			1	Pleidae*	4					Ephydridae	3				
DO: 8.29 mg/l	Atyidae	8	Α			Α	Veliidae/Mveliidae*	5	Α			Α	Muscidae	1				
Cond: 515 mS/m	Palaemonidae	10					MEGALOPTERA:						Psychodidae	1				
BIOTOPES SAMPLED:	HYDRACARINA	8					Cordalidae	8					Simuliidae	5	Α		Α	В
SIC: 3 TIME: minutes	PLECOPTERA:						Sialidae	6					Syrphidae*	1				
SOOC:	Notonemouridae	14					TRICHOPTERA						Tabanidae	5				
BEDROCK:	Perlidae	12					Dipseudopsidae	10					Tipulidae	5				
AQUATIC VEG: DOM SP:	EPHEMEROPTERA						Ecnomidae	8					GASTROPODA					
M VEG IC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 1sp	4					Hydropsychidae 1sp	4					Ancylidae	6				
M VEG OOC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 2 sp	6					Hydropsychidae 2 sp	6					Bulininae*	3				
GRAVEL:	Baetidae >2 sp	12	Α		Α	В	Hydropsychidae >2 sp	12					Hydrobiidae*	3				
SAND:	Caenidae	6					Philopotamidae	10	Α			Α	Lymnaeidae*	3				
M UD: 2	Ephemeridae	15					Polycentropodidae	12					Physidae*	3				
HAND PICKING/VISUAL OBS: YES	Heptageniidae	13					Psychomyiidae/Xiphocen.	8					Planorbidae*	3				
FLOW: LOW	Leptophlebiidae	9					CASED CADDIS:						Thiaridae*	3				
TURBIDITY: LOW	Oligoneuridae	15					Barbarochthonidae SWC	13					Viviparidae* ST	5				
RIPARIAN LAND USE:	Polymitarcyidae	10					Calamoceratidae ST	11					PELECYPODA					
	Prosopistomatidae	15					Glossosomatidae SWC	11					Corbiculidae	5				
	Teloganodidae SWC	12					Hydroptilidae	6					Sphaeriidae	3				
	Tricorythidae	9					Hydrosalpingidae SWC	15					Unionidae	6				
	ODONATA:	1					Lepidostomatidae	10					SASS SCORE:		48	0	30	61
DISTURBANCE IN RIVER:	Calopterygidae ST,T	10					Leptoceridae	6					NO OF TAXA:		7	0		9
	Chlorocyphidae	10					Petrothrincidae SWC	11					ASPT:		7	0.0	8	6.8
	Chlorolestidae	8					Pisuliidae	10					IH A S :	Ę	59%			
	Coenagrionidae	4					Sericostomatidae SWC	13					OTHER BIOTA:				·	
	Lestidae	8					COLEOPTERA:											
SIGNS OF POLLUTION:	Platycnemidae	10					Dytiscidae*	5					COMMENTS					
	Protoneuridae	8					Elmidae/Dryopidae*	8					* = airbreathers					
	Zygoptera juvs.	6					Gyrinidae*	5	Α			Α	SWC = South Wester	n Cai	ne.			
	Aeshnidae	8		l –			Halipidae*	5					T = Tropical					
	Corduliidae	8					Helodidae	12					ST = Sub-tropical					
OTHER OBSERVATIONS:	Gomphidae	6		i –			Hydraenidae*	8					S = Stone & rock					
	Libellulidae	4					Hydrophilidae*	5					VG = all vegetation					
	LEPIDOPTERA:	† ·			1		Limnichidae	10					GSM = gravel, sand &	muc				
	P yralidae	12	l –		1	1	Psephenidae	10			i –		1=1, A=2-10, B=10-100,			D=>10	00	



			RIVE	R HEA	LTH PI	ROGR	AMME - SASS 5 SCORE	SHEET	-				
DATE: 24/09/2014	TAXON		S	٧G	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот	TAXON
GRID REFERENCE:	PORIFERA	5					HEMIPTERA:						DIPTERA:
S:°	COELENTERATA	1					Belostomatidae*	3					Athericidae
E:°	TURBELLARIA	3					Corixidae*	3					B lepharo ceridae
SITE CODE: DHK B3	ANNELIDA:						Gerridae*	5					Ceratopogonidae
RIVER: KLEIN MARICO	Oligochaeta	1	1		1	Α	Hydrometridae*	6					Chironomidae
SITE DESCRIPTION: U/S PROP MINE	Leeches	3					Naucoridae*	7					Culicidae*
WEATHER CONDITION: WARM / DRY	CRUSTACEA:						Nepidae*	3					Dixidae*
TEM P: 19.4 °C	Amphipoda	13					Notonectidae*	3		С	В	В	Empididae
Ph: 6.96	Potamonautidae*	3					Pleidae*	4					Ephydridae
DO: 6.23 mg/l	Atyidae	8	Α	С	Α	С	Veliidae/Mveliidae*	5					Muscidae
Cond: 453 mS/m	Palaemonidae	10					MEGALOPTERA:						Psychodidae
BIOTOPES SAMPLED:	HYDRACARINA	8					Cordalidae	8					Simuliidae
SIC:2 TIME: minutes	PLECOPTERA:						Sialidae	6					Syrphidae*
SOOC:	Notonemouridae	14					TRICHOPTERA						Tabanidae
BEDROCK:	Perlidae	12					Dipseudopsidae	10					Tipulidae
AQUATIC VEG:5 DOM SP:	EPHEMEROPTERA						Ecnomidae	8					GASTROPODA
M VEGIC: DOM SP	Baetidae 1sp	4					Hydronsychidae 1sp	4					Ancylidae

SITE DESCRIPTION: U/S PROP MINE	Leeches	3					Nauco ridae^	1					Culicidae*	1			Α	A
WEATHER CONDITION: WARM / DRY	CRUSTACEA:						Nepidae*	3					Dixidae*	10				
TEM P: 19.4 °C	A mphipo da	13					Notonectidae*	3		С	В	В	Empididae	6				
Ph: 6.96	Potamonautidae*	3					Pleidae*	4					Ephydridae	3				
DO: 6.23 mg/l	Atyidae	8	Α	С	Α	С	Veliidae/Mveliidae*	5					Muscidae	1				
Cond: 453 mS/m	Palaemonidae	10					MEGALOPTERA:						Psychodidae	1				
BIOTOPES SAMPLED:	HYDRACARINA	8					Cordalidae	8					Simuliidae	5	Α	Α		В
SIC:2 TIME: minutes	PLECOPTERA:						Sialidae	6					Syrphidae*	1				
SOOC:	Notonemouridae	14					TRICHOPTERA						Tabanidae	5				
BEDROCK:	Perlidae	12					Dipseudopsidae	10					Tipulidae	5				
AQUATIC VEG:5 DOM SP:	EPHEMEROPTERA						Ecnomidae	8					GASTROPODA					
M VEG IC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 1sp	4					Hydropsychidae 1sp	4					Ancylidae	6				
M VEG OOC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 2 sp	6					Hydropsychidae 2 sp	6					Bulininae*	3				
GRAVEL: 3	Baetidae >2 sp	12	В	С		С	Hydropsychidae >2 sp	12					Hydrobiidae*	3				
SAND: 2	Caenidae	6	Α			Α	Philopotamidae	10					Lymnaeidae*	3				
MUD:2	Ephemeridae	15					Polycentropodidae	12					Physidae*	3				
HAND PICKING/VISUAL OBS: YES	Heptageniidae	13					Psychomyiidae/Xiphocen.	8					Planorbidae*	3				
FLOW: LOW	Leptophlebiidae	9	1			1	CASED CADDIS:						Thiaridae*	3				
TURBIDITY: LOW	Oligoneuridae	15					Barbarochthonidae SWC	13					Viviparidae* ST	5				
RIPARIAN LAND USE:	Polymitarcyidae	10					Calamo ceratidae ST	11					PELECYPODA					
	Prosopistomatidae	15					Glossosomatidae SWC	11					Corbiculidae	5				
	Teloganodidae SWC	12					Hydroptilidae	6					Sphaeriidae	3				
	Tricorythidae	9					Hydrosalpingidae SWC	15					Unionidae	6				
	ODONATA:						Lepidostomatidae	10					SASS SCORE:		52	49	20	70
DISTURBANCE IN RIVER:	Calopterygidae ST,T	10					Leptoceridae	6					NO OF TAXA:		9	9	6	14
	Chlorocyphidae	10					Petrothrincidae SWC	11					ASPT:		6	5.4	3	5.0
	Chlorolestidae	8					Pisuliidae	10					IH A S :	6	65%			
	Coenagrionidae	4	Α			Α	Sericostomatidae SWC	13					OTHER BIOTA:					
	Lestidae	8					COLEOPTERA:						B.ANO? / P.PHI					
SIGNS OF POLLUTION:	Platycnemidae	10					Dytiscidae*	5		Α		Α	COMMENTS:					
	Protoneuridae	8					Elmidae/Dryopidae*	8					* = airbreathers					
	Zygoptera juvs.	6					Gyrinidae*	5	Α	Α	Α	В	SWC = South Wester	n Car	be			
	Aeshnidae	8					Halipidae*	5					T = Tropical					
	Corduliidae	8			1		Helodidae	12					ST = Sub-tropical					
					1				1									
OTHER OBSERVATIONS:	Gomphidae	6					Hydraenidae*	8					S = Stone & rock					
OTHER OBSERVATIONS:		6 4		1		1	Hydraenidae* Hydrophilidae*	8		в		в						
OTHER OBSERVATIONS:	Gomphidae	-		1		1		-		В		В	S = Stone & rock VG = all vegetation GSM = gravel, sand &	mud	1			



S VG GSM TOT

1

A A B A

10 15

5

2 Α

1



	-	_					AMME - SASS 5 SCORE SH	IEET							_			
DATE : 24/09/2014	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот
GRID REFERENCE:	PORIFERA	5					HEMIPTERA:						DIPTERA:					
S:°	COELENTERATA	1					Belostomatidae*	3					Athericidae	10				<u> </u>
E:°	TURBELLARIA	3					Corixidae*	3					B lepharo ceridae	15				
SITE CODE: DHK B4	ANNELIDA:						Gerridae*	5		Α		Α	Ceratopogonidae	5				
RIVER: KLEIN MARICO	Oligochaeta	1					Hydrometridae*	6					Chironomidae	2	1			1
SITE DESCRIPTION: MID POINT	Leeches	3					Naucoridae*	7					Culicidae*	1				L
WEATHER CONDITION: WARM / CLEAR	CRUSTACEA:						Nepidae*	3					Dixidae*	10				
TEMP: 18.5 °C	Amphipoda	13					Notonectidae*	3		В		В	Empididae	6				
Ph: 7.82	Potamonautidae*	3					Pleidae*	4					Ephydridae	3				
DO: 6.86 mg/l	Atyidae	8	Α	В		В	Veliidae/Mveliidae*	5					Muscidae	1				
Cond: 379 mS/m	Palaemonidae	10					MEGALOPTERA:						Psychodidae	1				
BIOTOPES SAMPLED:	HYDRACARINA	8					Cordalidae	8					Simuliidae	5	В			В
SIC:2 TIME: minutes	PLECOPTERA:						Sialidae	6					Syrphidae*	1				
SOOC:1	Notonemouridae	14					TRICHOPTERA						Tabanidae	5				
BEDROCK:	Perlidae	12					Dipseudopsidae	10					Tipulidae	5				
AQUATIC VEG: DOM SP:	EPHEMEROPTERA						Ecnomidae	8					GASTROPODA					
M VEG IC: 1 DOM SP:	Baetidae 1sp	4					Hydropsychidae 1sp	4					Ancylidae	6				
M VEG OOC: 2 DOM SP:	Baetidae 2 sp	6					Hydropsychidae 2 sp	6					Bulininae*	3				
GRAVEL:	Baetidae >2 sp	12	A	В			Hydropsychidae >2 sp	12					Hydrobiidae*	3				
SAND:	Caenidae	6	Α			Α	Philopotamidae	10					Lymnaeidae*	3				
MUD:	Ephemeridae	15					Polycentropodidae	12					Physidae*	3	1			1
HAND PICKING/VISUAL OBS: YES	Heptageniidae	13					Psychomyiidae/Xiphocen.	8					Planorbidae*	3				
FLOW: LOW	Leptophlebiidae	9					CASED CADDIS:						Thiaridae*	3				
TURBIDITY: LOW	Oligoneuridae	15					Barbarochthonidae SWC	13					Viviparidae* ST	5				
RIPARIAN LAND USE:	Polymitarcyidae	10					Calamoceratidae ST	11					PELECYPODA					
	Prosopistomatidae	15					Glossosomatidae SWC	11					Corbiculidae	5				
	Teloganodidae SWC	12					Hydroptilidae	6					Sphaeriidae	3				
	Tricorythidae	9					Hydrosalpingidae SWC	15					Unionidae	6				
	ODONATA:						Lepidostomatidae	10					SASS SCORE:		51	41	5	67
DISTURBANCE IN RIVER:	Calopterygidae ST,T	10					Leptoceridae	6					NO OF TAXA:		9	6	1	12
	Chlorocyphidae	10					Petrothrincidae SWC	11					ASPT:		6	6.8	5	5.6
	Chlorolestidae	8					Pisuliidae	10					IH A S :	5	57%			
	Coenagrionidae	4					Sericostomatidae SWC	13					OTHER BIOTA:					
	Lestidae	8					COLEOPTERA:						XENOPOS/DAPHN	IIA				
SIGNS OF POLLUTION:	Platycnemidae	10					Dytiscidae*	5	Α	Α		в	COMMENTS:					
	Protoneuridae	8					Elmidae/Dryopidae*	8					* = airbreathers					
	Zygoptera juvs.	6					Gyrinidae*	5	Α			Α	SWC = South Wester	n Ca	ре			
	Aeshnidae	8		1		1	Halipidae*	5					T = Tropical					
	Corduliidae	8					Helodidae	12					ST = Sub-tropical					
OTHER OBSERVATIONS:	Gomphidae	6					Hydraenidae*	8					S = Stone & rock					
	Libellulidae	4					Hydrophilidae*	5	1		Α	Α	VG = all vegetation					
	LEPIDOPTERA:			1			Limnichidae	10		1			GSM = gravel, sand &	muc				
	Pvralidae	12					Psephenidae	10				1	1=1, A=2-10, B=10-100,			.D=>10	00	





			RIVE	R HEA	LTH PI	ROGR	AMME - SASS 5 SCORE SH	HEE	Г									
DATE: 29/09/2014	TAXON		S	٧G	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот
GRID REFERENCE:	PORIFERA	5					HEMIPTERA:						DIPTERA:					
S:°	COELENTERATA	1					Belostomatidae*	3					Athericidae	10				
E:°	TURBELLARIA	3					Corixidae*	3		Α		Α	B lepharo ceridae	15				
SITE CODE: DHK B5	ANNELIDA:						Gerridae*	5		Α		Α	Ceratopogonidae	5		1		1
RIVER: KLEIN MARICO	Oligochaeta	1					Hydrometridae*	6					Chironomidae	2			Α	Α
SITE DESCRIPTION: D/S ALL PROP MINE	Leeches	3					Naucoridae*	7					Culicidae*	1		1		
WEATHER CONDITION:	CRUSTACEA:						Nepidae*	3					Dixidae*	10				
TEMP: 17.4 °C	Amphipoda	13					Notonectidae*	3		1		1	Empididae	6				
Ph: 7.59	Potamonautidae*	3		1		1	Pleidae*	4					Ephydridae	3				
DO: 7.39 mg/l	Atyidae	8					Veliidae/Mveliidae*	5		Α		Α	Muscidae	1				
Cond: 526 mS/m	Palaemonidae	10					MEGALOPTERA:						Psychodidae	1				
BIOTOPES SAMPLED:	HYDRACARINA	8					Cordalidae	8					Simuliidae	5			С	С
SIC: TIME: minutes	PLECOPTERA:						Sialidae	6					Syrphidae*	1				
SOOC:	Notonemouridae	14					TRICHOPTERA						Tabanidae	5				
BEDROCK:	Perlidae	12					Dipseudopsidae	10					Tipulidae	5				
AQUATIC VEG: DOM SP:	EPHEMEROPTERA						Ecnomidae	8					GASTROPODA					
M VEG IC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 1sp	4					Hydropsychidae 1sp	4					Ancylidae	6				
M VEG OOC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 2 sp	6					Hydropsychidae 2 sp	6					Bulininae*	3				
GRAVEL: 4	Baetidae >2 sp	12		В	Α	В	Hydropsychidae >2 sp	12					Hydrobiidae*	3				
SAND:	Caenidae	6			Α	Α	Philopotamidae	10					Lymnaeidae*	3				
M UD:	Ephemeridae	15					Polycentropodidae	12					Physidae*	3				
HAND PICKING/VISUAL OBS: YES	Heptageniidae	13					Psychomyiidae/Xiphocen.	8					Planorbidae*	3				
FLOW: LOW	Leptophlebiidae	9					CASED CADDIS:						Thiaridae*	3				
TURBIDITY: LOW	Oligoneuridae	15					Barbarochthonidae SWC	13					Viviparidae* ST	5				
RIPARIAN LAND USE:	Polymitarcyidae	10					Calamo ceratidae ST	11					PELECYPODA					\square
	Prosopistomatidae	15					Glossosomatidae SWC	11					Corbiculidae	5				
	Teloganodidae SWC	12					Hydroptilidae	6					Sphaeriidae	3				
	Tricorythidae	9					Hydrosalpingidae SWC	15					Unionidae	6				
	ODONATA:						Lepidostomatidae	10					SASS SCORE:		0	63	30	70
DISTURBANCE IN RIVER:	Calopterygidae ST,T	10					Leptoceridae	6					NO OF TAXA:		0	13	5	14
	Chlorocyphidae	10					Petrothrincidae SWC	11					ASPT:		0	4.8	6	5.0
	Chlorolestidae	8					Pisuliidae	10					IHAS:	Ę	54%			
	Coenagrionidae	4		Α		Α	Sericostomatidae SWC	13					OTHER BIOTA:	-				
	Lestidae	8		1		1	COLEOPTERA:											
SIGNS OF POLLUTION:	Platycnemidae	10				-	Dytiscidae*	5		A			COMMENTS					
	Protoneuridae	8					Elmidae/Dryopidae*	8					* = airbreathers					
	Zygoptera juvs.	6					Gyrinidae*	5		A	1	Α	SWC = South Wester	n Cai	ne.			
	Aeshnidae	8					Halipidae*	5		<u> </u>	<u> </u>		T = Tropical					
	Corduliidae	8		İ –			Helodidae	12				İ –	ST = Sub-tropical					
OTHER OBSERVATIONS:	Gomphidae	6		i –	1		Hydraenidae*	8			1	i –	S = Stone & rock					
	Libellulidae	4		1		1	Hydrophilidae*	5			1		VG = all vegetation					
	LEPIDOPTERA:	† ·		<u> </u>	1		Limnichidae	10					GSM = gravel, sand 8	muc				
	Pyralidae	12					Psephenidae	10			<u> </u>		1=1, A=2-10, B=10-100,			D=>10	00	



			RIVE	R HEA	LTH PI	ROGR	AMME - SASS 5 SCORE SH	HEET	Г									
DATE: 27/05/2016	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот
GRID REFERENCE:	PORIFERA	5					HEMIPTERA:						DIPTERA:					
S:°	COELENTERATA	1					Belostomatidae*	3					Athericidae	10				
E:°	TURBELLARIA	3					Corixidae*	3			•	1	Blepharoceridae	15				
SITE CODE: DHK B1	ANNELIDA:						Gerridae*	5		В		В	Ceratopogonidae	5			Α	Α
RIVER:	Oligo chaeta	1			•	1	Hydrometridae*	6					Chironomidae	2		Α	Α	В
SITE DESCRIPTION: REP.	Leeches	3					Naucoridae*	7					Culicidae*	1				
WEATHER CONDITION: COOL AND CLEAR	CRUSTACEA:						Nepidae*	3					Dixidae*	10				
TEM P: 19.5 °C	Amphipoda	13					Notonectidae*	3		Α	Α	В	Empididae	6				
Ph: 7.98	Potamonautidae*	3		•			Pleidae*	4					Ephydridae	3				
DO: mg/l	Atyidae	8		Α	Α	В	Veliidae/Mveliidae*	5	Α	В		В	Muscidae	1				
Cond: 53.0 mS/m	Palaemonidae	10					MEGALOPTERA:						Psychodidae	1				
BIOTOPES SAMPLED:	HYDRACARINA	8	•	•		Α	Cordalidae	8					Simuliidae	5	Α		Α	В
SIC: TIME: minutes	PLECOPTERA:						Sialidae	6					Syrphidae*	1				
SOOC:	Notonemouridae	14					TRICHOPTERA						Tabanidae	5				
BEDROCK:	Perlidae	12					Dipseudopsidae	10					Tipulidae	5			•	1
AQUATIC VEG: DOM SP:	EPHEMEROPTERA						Ecnomidae	8					GASTROPODA					
M VEG IC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 1sp	4		Α			Hydropsychidae 1sp	4					Ancylidae	6				
M VEG OOC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 2 sp	6					Hydropsychidae 2 sp	6					Bulininae*	3				
GRAVEL:	Baetidae >2 sp	12	Α			В	Hydropsychidae >2 sp	12					Hydrobiidae*	3				
SAND:	Caenidae	6		Α		Α	Philopotamidae	10					Lymnaeidae*	3				
M UD:	Ephemeridae	15					Polycentropodidae	12					Physidae*	3				
HAND PICKING/VISUAL OBS:	Heptageniidae	13					Psychomyiidae/Xiphocen.	8					Planorbidae*	3		•		1
FLOW:	Leptophlebiidae	9					CASED CADDIS:						Thiaridae*	3				
TURBIDITY:	Oligoneuridae	15					Barbaro chtho nidae SWC	13					Viviparidae* ST	5				
RIPARIAN LAND USE:	Polymitarcyidae	10					Calamo ceratidae ST	11					PELECYPODA					
	Prosopistomatidae	15					Glossosomatidae SWC	11					Corbiculidae	5				
	Telogano didae SWC	12					Hydroptilidae	6					Sphaeriidae	3				
	Tricorythidae	9					Hydrosalpingidae SWC	15					Unionidae	6				
	ODONATA:						Lepidostomatidae	10					SASS SCORE:		36	61	38	91
DISTURBANCE IN RIVER:	Calopterygidae ST,T	10					Leptoceridae	6					NO OF TAXA:		5	13	9	18
	Chlo ro cyphidae	10					Petrothrincidae SWC	11					ASPT:		7	4.7	4	5.1
	Chlorolestidae	8					Pisuliidae	10					IHAS:	7	2%			
	Coenagrionidae	4		Α		Α	Sericostomatidae SWC	13					OTHER BIOTA:					
	Lestidae	8					COLEOPTERA:											
SIGNS OF POLLUTION:	Platycnemidae	10					Dytiscidae*	5		Α		Α	COMMENTS					
	Protoneuridae	8					Elmidae/Dryopidae*	8					HOT SPRING					
	Zygoptera juvs.	6					Gyrinidae*	5		Α		Α						
	Aeshnidae	8					Halipidae*	5										
	Corduliidae	8					Helodidae	12					* = airbreathers					
OTHER OBSERVATIONS:	Gomphidae	6	Α		Α	В	Hydraenidae*	8			1		SWC = South Wester	n Cap	e T	= Tro	pical	
	Libellulidae	4			l		Hydrophilidae*	5					VG = all vegetation				, -tropica	al
	LEPIDOPTERA:		İ	Ì	1		Limnichidae	10					GSM = gravel, sand 8	mud			ne & ro	
	Pyralidae	12	Ì		Ī		Psephenidae	10				İ	1=1, A=2-10, B=10-100,			D=>10	00	





			RIVE	R HEA	LTH PI	ROGR	AMME - SASS 5 SCORE SH	HEET	Г									
DATE: 26/05/2016	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот
GRID REFERENCE:	PORIFERA	5					HEMIPTERA:						DIPTERA:					
S:°	COELENTERATA	1					Belostomatidae*	3					Athericidae	10				
E:°	TURBELLARIA	3					Corixidae*	3		Α	Α	В	Blepharoceridae	15				
SITE CODE: DHK B2	ANNELIDA:						Gerridae*	5					Ceratopogonidae	5		•		1
RIVER:	Oligochaeta	1		•		1	Hydrometridae*	6					Chironomidae	2		Α	Α	В
SITE DESCRIPTION:	Leeches	3					Naucoridae*	7					Culicidae*	1			•	1
WEATHER CONDITION: COOL AND CLEAR	CRUSTACEA:						Nepidae*	3					Dixidae*	10				
TEMP: 13.4 °C	Amphipoda	13					Notonectidae*	3		Α		Α	Empididae	6				
Ph: 7.80	Potamonautidae*	3		•	Α	Α	Pleidae*	4					Ephydridae	3				
DO: mg/l	Atyidae	8		в	•	В	Veliidae/Mveliidae*	5		Α		Α	Muscidae	1				
Cond: 64.0 mS/m	Palaemonidae	10					MEGALOPTERA:						Psychodidae	1				
BIOTOPES SAMPLED:	HYDRACARINA	8		•		1	Cordalidae	8					Simuliidae	5				
SIC: TIME: minutes	PLECOPTERA:						Sialidae	6					Syrphidae*	1				
SOOC:	Notonemouridae	14					TRICHOPTERA						Tabanidae	5				
BEDROCK:	Perlidae	12					Dipseudopsidae	10					Tipulidae	5				
AQUATIC VEG: DOM SP:	EPHEMEROPTERA						Ecnomidae	8					GASTROPODA					
M VEG IC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 1sp	4					Hydropsychidae 1sp	4					Ancylidae	6				
M VEG OOC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 2 sp	6					Hydropsychidae 2 sp	6					Bulininae*	3				
GRAVEL:	Baetidae >2 sp	12					Hydropsychidae >2 sp	12					Hydro biidae*	3				
SAND:	Caenidae	6					Philopotamidae	10					Lymnaeidae*	3			\square	
MUD:	Ephemeridae	15					Polycentropodidae	12					Physidae*	3				
HAND PICKING/VISUAL OBS:	Heptageniidae	13					Psychomyiidae/Xiphocen.	8					Planorbidae*	3				
FLOW:	Leptophlebiidae	9					CASED CADDIS:						Thiaridae*	3				
TUR BIDITY :	Oligoneuridae	15					Barbarochthonidae SWC	13					Viviparidae* ST	5				
RIPARIAN LAND USE:	Polymitarcyidae	10					Calamo ceratidae ST	11					PELECYPODA				\square	
	Prosopistomatidae	15					Glossosomatidae SWC	11					Corbiculidae	5				
	Teloganodidae SWC	12					Hydroptilidae	6					Sphaeriidae	3				
	Tricorythidae	9					Hydro salpingidae SWC	15					Unionidae	6			\square	
	ODONATA:						Lepidostomatidae	10					SASS SCORE:		0	46	17	47
DISTURBANCE IN RIVER:	Calopterygidae ST,T	10					Leptoceridae	6					NO OF TAXA:		0			
	Chlorocyphidae	10					Petrothrincidae SWC	11					ASPT:		0	4.2	3	3.9
	Chlorolestidae	8					Pisuliidae	10					IHAS:	4	6%			
	Coenagrionidae	4		•		1	Sericostomatidae SWC	13					OTHER BIOTA:				. <u> </u>	
	Lestidae	8					COLEOPTERA:						TADPOLE					
SIGNS OF POLLUTION:	Platycnemidae	10					Dytiscidae*	5					COMMENTS					
	Protoneuridae	8					Elmidae/Dryopidae*	8										
	Zygoptera juvs.	6					Gyrinidae*	5										
	Aeshnidae	8			1		Halipidae*	5										
	Corduliidae	8					Helodidae	12					* = airbreathers					
OTHER OBSERVATIONS:	Gomphidae	6			t		Hydraenidae*	8					SWC = South Western	n Car	е т	= Trop	bical	
	Libellulidae	4		•		1	Hydrophilidae*	5					VG = all vegetation				tropica	1
	LEPIDOPTERA:	<u> </u>			1	· ·	Limnichidae	10					GSM = gravel, sand &	mud			ne & roc	
	Pyralidae	12			1		Psephenidae	10					1=1, A=2-10, B=10-100,					





			RIVE	R HEA	LTH P	ROGR	AMME - SASS 5 SCORE SH	HEET	-									
DATE: 26/05/2016	TAXON		S				TAXON	1	S	VG	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	٧G	GSM	тот
GRID REFERENCE:	PORIFERA	5					HEMIPTERA:						DIPTERA:					
S:°	COELENTERATA	1					Belostomatidae*	3					Athericidae	10				
E:°	TURBELLARIA	3					Corixidae*	3			1		Blepharoceridae	15				
SITE CODE: DHK B3	ANNELIDA:						Gerridae*	5		В	1	В	Ceratopogonidae	5		Α	•	Α
RIVER:	Oligochaeta	1					Hydrometridae*	6					Chironomidae	2	Α		Α	В
SITE DESCRIPTION: REP.	Leeches	3					Naucoridae*	7					Culicidae*	1		Α	•	Α
WEATHER CONDITION: WARM AND CLEAR	CRUSTACEA:						Nepidae*	3					Dixidae*	10				
TEMP: 15.7 °C	Amphipoda	13					Notonectidae*	3	Α	Α	Α	В	Empididae	6				
Ph: 7.73	Potamonautidae*	3					Pleidae*	4		•		1	Ephydridae	3				
DO: mg/l	Atyidae	8	•	В	•	В	Veliidae/Mveliidae*	5		Α		Α	Muscidae	1				
Cond: 52.0 mS/m	Palaemonidae	10					MEGALOPTERA:						Psychodidae	1				
BIOTOPES SAMPLED:	HYDRACARINA	8	•	Α	•	Α	Cordalidae	8					Simuliidae	5				
SIC: TIME: minutes	PLECOPTERA:						Sialidae	6					Syrphidae*	1				
SOOC:	Notonemouridae	14					TRICHOPTERA						Tabanidae	5				
BEDROCK:	Perlidae	12					Dipseudopsidae	10					Tipulidae	5				
AQUATIC VEG: DOM SP:	EPHEMEROPTERA						Ecnomidae	8					GASTROPODA					
M VEG IC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 1sp	4			•		Hydropsychidae 1sp	4					Ancylidae	6				
M VEG OOC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 2 sp	6					Hydropsychidae 2 sp	6					Bulininae*	3				
GRAVEL:	Baetidae >2 sp	12		Α		Α	Hydropsychidae >2 sp	12					Hydrobiidae*	3				
SAND:	Caenidae	6					Philopotamidae	10					Lymnaeidae*	3				
M UD:	Ephemeridae	15					Polycentropodidae	12					Physidae*	3				
HAND PICKING/VISUAL OBS:	Heptageniidae	13					Psychomyiidae/Xiphocen.	8					Planorbidae*	3		Α		Α
FLOW:	Leptophlebiidae	9					CASED CADDIS:						Thiaridae*	3				
TUR BIDITY :	Oligoneuridae	15					Barbaro chtho nidae SWC	13					Viviparidae* ST	5				
RIPARIAN LAND USE:	Polymitarcyidae	10					Calamo ceratidae ST	11					PELECYPODA					
	Prosopistomatidae	15					Glossosomatidae SWC	11					Corbiculidae	5				
	Telo gano didae SWC	12					Hydroptilidae	6					Sphaeriidae	3				
	Tricorythidae	9					Hydrosalpingidae SWC	15					Unionidae	6				
	ODONATA:						Lepidostomatidae	10			1		SASS SCORE:		21	54	39	64
DISTURBANCE IN RIVER:	Calopterygidae ST,T	10					Leptoceridae	6					NO OF TAXA:		4	10	8	3 12
	Chlorocyphidae	10					Petrothrincidae SWC	11			1		ASPT:		5	5.4	5	5.3
	Chlorolestidae	8					Pisuliidae	10					IHAS:	5	55%			
	Coenagrionidae	4					Sericostomatidae SWC	13					OTHER BIOTA:					
	Lestidae	8			Α	Α	COLEOPTERA:						DAPHNIA					
SIGNS OF POLLUTION:	Platycnemidae	10					Dytiscidae*	5					COMMENTS					
-	Protoneuridae	8		1	1		Elmidae/Dryopidae*	8			Ī		-					
	Zygoptera juvs.	6		1	1		Gyrinidae*	5			1							
	Aeshnidae	8		1			Halipidae*	5			1							
	Corduliidae	8		1	1		Helodidae	12			Ī		* = airbreathers					
OTHER OBSERVATIONS:	Gomphidae	6		1	1		Hydraenidae*	8			1		SWC = South Wester	n Car	be T	= Tro	pical	
	Libellulidae	4		1	1		Hydrophilidae*	5			1		VG = all vegetation				-tropic	al
	LEPIDOPTERA:	<u> </u>		1	1		Limnichidae	10			1		GSM = gravel, sand 8	mud			ne & ro	
	Pyralidae	12		t i	1		Psephenidae	10			1		1=1, A = 2-10, B = 10-100,					





			RIVE				AMME - SASS 5 SCORE SH	HEET										
DATE: 26/05/2016	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот
GRID REFERENCE:	PORIFERA	5					HEMIPTERA:						DIPTERA:					
S:°	COELENTERATA	1					Belostomatidae*	3					Athericidae	10				
E:°	TURBELLARIA	3					Corixidae*	3			В	В	Blepharoceridae	15				
SITE CODE: DHK B4	ANNELIDA:						Gerridae*	5		В	•	В	Ceratopogonidae	5			•	1
RIVER:	Oligochaeta	1			•	1	Hydrometridae*	6					Chironomidae	2		Α	Α	В
SITE DESCRIPTION: REP.	Leeches	3					Naucoridae*	7					Culicidae*	1		В		В
WEATHER CONDITION: COOL AND CLEAR							Nepidae*	3					Dixidae*	10				
TEMP:13.7 °C	Amphipoda	13		•		1	Notonectidae*	3		В	В	С	Empididae	6				
Ph: 7.91	Potamonautidae*	3					Pleidae*	4					Ephydridae	3				
DO: mg/l	Atyidae	8					Veliidae/Mveliidae*	5		Α		Α	Muscidae	1				
Cond: 48.0 mS/m	Palaemonidae	10					MEGALOPTERA:						Psychodidae	1				
BIOTOPES SAMPLED:	HYDRACARINA	8		Α		Α	Cordalidae	8					Simuliidae	5				
SIC: TIME: minutes	PLECOPTERA:						Sialidae	6					Syrphidae*	1				
SOOC:	Notonemouridae	14					TRICHOPTERA						Tabanidae	5				
BEDROCK:	Perlidae	12					Dipseudopsidae	10					Tipulidae	5				
AQUATIC VEG: DOM SP:	EPHEMEROPTERA						Ecnomidae	8					GASTROPODA					
M VEG IC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 1sp	4					Hydropsychidae 1sp	4					Ancylidae	6				
M VEG OOC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 2 sp	6					Hydropsychidae 2 sp	6					Bulininae*	3				
GRAVEL:	Baetidae >2 sp	12		В		В	Hydropsychidae >2 sp	12					Hydrobiidae*	3				
SAND:	Caenidae	6		•		1	Philopotamidae	10					Lymnaeidae*	3				
M UD:	Ephemeridae	15					Polycentropodidae	12					Physidae*	3				
HAND PICKING/VISUAL OBS:	Heptageniidae	13					Psychomyiidae/Xiphocen.	8					Planorbidae*	3		Α		Α
FLOW:	Leptophlebiidae	9					CASED CADDIS:						Thiaridae*	3				
TURBIDITY:	Oligoneuridae	15					Barbaro chtho nidae SWC	13					Viviparidae* ST	5				
RIPARIAN LAND USE:	Polymitarcyidae	10					Calamo ceratidae ST	11					PELECYPODA					
	Prosopistomatidae	15					Glossosomatidae SWC	11					Corbiculidae	5				
	Telogano didae SWC	12					Hydroptilidae	6					Sphaeriidae	3				
	Tricorythidae	9					Hydrosalpingidae SWC	15					Unionidae	6				
	ODONATA:						Lepidostomatidae	10					SASS SCORE:		0	71	19	80
DISTURBANCE IN RIVER:	Calopterygidae ST,T	10					Leptoceridae	6					NO OF TAXA:		0	12	6	15
	Chlorocyphidae	10					Petrothrincidae SWC	11					ASPT:		0	5.9	3	5.3
	Chlorolestidae	8					Pisuliidae	10					IHAS:	4	4%			
	Coenagrionidae	4					Sericostomatidae SWC	13					OTHER BIOTA:					
	Lestidae	8		Α		Α	COLEOPTERA:						5 x FISH, 2 x FROGS					
SIGNS OF POLLUTION:	Platycnemidae	10					Dytiscidae*	5		Α		Α	COMMENTS					
	Protoneuridae	8					Elmidae/Dryopidae*	8										
	Zygoptera juvs.	6					Gyrinidae*	5										
	Aeshnidae	8		1	1		Halipidae*	5		İ	1							
	Corduliidae	8	1		1		Helodidae	12			1		* = airbreathers					
OTHER OBSERVATIONS:	Gomphidae	6	İ				Hydraenidae*	8				İ	SWC = South Wester	n Cai	be T	Γ = Tro	pical	
	Libellulidae	4		1	1		Hydrophilidae*	5			1		VG = all vegetation			= Sub		al
	LEPIDOPTERA:	L.					Limnichidae	10			1		GSM = gravel, sand &	muc		S = Sto		
	Pyralidae	12		1	1	1	Psephenidae	10	1		1		1=1, A =2-10, B =10-100,					





			RIVE	R HEA	LTH PI	ROGR	AMME - SASS 5 SCORE SH	HEET	F									
DATE: 26/05/2016	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот	TAXON		S	VG	GSM	тот
GRID REFERENCE:	PORIFERA	5	Α		1	Α	HEMIPTERA:						DIPTERA:					
S:°	COELENTERATA	1					Belostomatidae*	3					Athericidae	10				
E:°	TURBELLARIA	3	Α			Α	Corixidae*	3	в		В	С	Blepharoceridae	15				
SITE CODE: DHKK4	ANNELIDA:						Gerridae*	5		В	•	В	Ceratopogonidae	5			Α	Α
RIVER: 1	Oligochaeta	1			•	1	Hydrometridae*	6					Chironomidae	2	Α	Α	В	В
SITE DESCRIPTION: REP.	Leeches	3					Naucoridae*	7					Culicidae*	1				
WEATHER CONDITION: HOT AND CLEAR	CRUSTACEA:						Nepidae*	3					Dixidae*	10				
TEMP: 15.7 °C	Amphipoda	13					Notonectidae*	3		Α	Α	В	Empididae	6				
Ph: 8.04	Potamonautidae*	3					Pleidae*	4			•	1	Ephydridae	3				
DO: mg/l	Atyidae	8		В		В	Veliidae/Mveliidae*	5		В		В	Muscidae	1				
Cond:48.0 mS/m	Palaemonidae	10					MEGALOPTERA:						Psychodidae	1				
BIOTOPES SAMPLED:	HYDRACARINA	8			Α	Α	Cordalidae	8					Simuliidae	5	٠			1
SIC: TIME: minutes	PLECOPTERA:						Sialidae	6					Syrphidae*	1				
SOOC:	Notonemouridae	14					TRICHOPTERA						Tabanidae	5				
BEDROCK:	Perlidae	12					Dipseudopsidae	10					Tipulidae	5				
AQUATIC VEG: DOM SP:	EPHEMEROPTERA						Ecnomidae	8					GASTROPODA					
M VEG IC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 1sp	4					Hydropsychidae 1sp	4					Ancylidae	6				
M VEG OOC: DOM SP:	Baetidae 2 sp	6			1		Hydropsychidae 2 sp	6					Bulininae*	3				
GRAVEL:	Baetidae >2 sp	12	В			В	Hydropsychidae >2 sp	12					Hydrobiidae*	3				
SAND:	Caenidae	6	Α		•	Α	Philopotamidae	10	Α			Α	Lymnaeidae*	3				
M UD:	Ephemeridae	15					Polycentropodidae	12					Physidae*	3				
HAND PICKING/VISUAL OBS:	Heptageniidae	13					Psychomyiidae/Xiphocen.	8					Planorbidae*	3		Α		Α
FLOW:	Leptophlebiidae	9			1		CASED CADDIS:						Thiaridae*	3				
TURBIDITY:	Oligoneuridae	15			1		Barbaro chtho nidae SWC	13					Viviparidae* ST	5				i i
RIPARIAN LAND USE:	Polymitarcyidae	10			1		Calamo ceratidae ST	11					PELECYPODA					
	Prosopistomatidae	15			1		Glossosomatidae SWC	11					Corbiculidae	5				
	Telogano didae SWC	12					Hydroptilidae	6					Sphaeriidae	3				
	Tricorythidae	9			1		Hydrosalpingidae SWC	15					Unionidae	6				
	ODONATA:						Lepidostomatidae	10					SASS SCORE:		41	51	43	114
DISTURBANCE IN RIVER:	Calopterygidae ST,T	10					Leptoceridae	6					NO OF TAXA:		7	10	10	21
	Chlorocyphidae	10					Petrothrincidae SWC	11					ASPT:		6	5.1	4	5.4
	Chlorolestidae	8					Pisuliidae	10					IHAS:	6	0%			
	Coenagrionidae	4		•	1	1	Sericostomatidae SWC	13					OTHER BIOTA:		• • •			
	Lestidae	8			1	-	COLEOPTERA:						TP. DAPHNIA					
SIGNS OF POLLUTION:	Platycnemidae	10					Dytiscidae*	5					COMMENTS					
	Protoneuridae	8			1		Elmidae/Dryopidae*	8										
	Zygoptera juvs.	6			1		Gyrinidae*	5		Α		Α						
	Aeshnidae	8			1		Halipidae*	5										
	Corduliidae	8					Helodidae	12			1		* = airbreathers					
OTHER OBSERVATIONS:	Gomphidae	6			•	1	Hydraenidae*	8			1		SWC = South Wester	n Car	е т	= Tro	oical	
	Libellulidae	4		Α	1	A	Hydrophilidae*	5			1		VG = all vegetation				tropica	1
	LEPIDOPTERA:	L .			1		Limnichidae	10					GSM = gravel, sand &	mud			ne & roo	
	Pyralidae	12		•	1	1	Psephenidae	10			<u> </u>		1=1, A =2-10, B =10-100,					





APPENDIX 8: Impact Assessment – The Plomp Method

	Loss of instream flow							
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect			
			Magnitude					
Plan	ning Phase							
	Potentially poor planning leading to extensive dirty water areas which need	WOM	Low	* Ensure that as far as possible all infrastructures are placed outside of	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources			
1	to be managed which may reduce the mean annual run-off (MAR) to the non- perennial drainage systems in the area.	WM	Negligible	drainage and river areas. In particular mention is made of the need to not encroach on the riparian systems near the Klein Marico River and its associated tributaries with a minimum buffer of 100m around all riparian	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated			
2	Stormwater designs leading to rapid release of water which in turn may	WOM	Moderate	systems maintained in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 the National Water Act. Layout option 2 (Figure 25) is thus strongly discouraged from an aquatic health perspective * Ensure that sound	Can be reversed			
2	lead to a loss of streamflow regulation capabilities in the area	WM	Low	environmental management is in place during the planning phase * Dirty water dams should be off stream and tributary structures and not within the	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated			
	Use of surface runoff and groundwater	WOM	High	natural drainage system of the area, thereby minimising impacts loss of instream flow and downstream recharge * Dirty water dams should be off	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources			
3	sources for the supply of production water for the mining project may alter the flow in the receiving systems	WM	Low	stream structures and not within the natural drainage system of the area, thereby minimising impacts from inundation and siltation * Minimise loss of aquatic features where possible through planning and suitable layouts.	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated			
4	Use of Layout Option 2 may impact on the instream flow of the receiving	WOM	High	Special mention is made of Layout Option 2, which is not recommended from an aquatic health point of view	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources			
4	systems.	WM	Negligible		Can be avoided, managed or mitigated			
Con	struction Phase	tion Phase						
5	Disturbance of soils during the construction phase could lead to erosion and sedimentation of the aquatic resources present, thus resulting in a loss of instream flow.	WOM	High	* Limit the footprint area of the construction activity to what is absolutely essential in order to minimise the loss of clean water runoff areas and the concomitant recharge of streams in the area * If it is absolutely unavoidable that either the Klein Marico River or its associated tributaries will be affected, disturbance must be minimised and suitably rehabilitated * Ensure	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources			



	Loss of instream flow				
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect
			Magnitude		
		WM	Negligible	that no incision and canalisation of the aquatic resources present takes place as a result of site clearing and construction activities * All erosion noted within the study area should be remedied immediately and included as part of the ongoing rehabilitation plan * During the construction phase of the proposed Doornhoek mining project, erosion berms should be installed	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
6	Construction of clean and dirty water separation structures for dirty water control purposes may lead to altered	WOM	Moderate	on roadways to prevent gully formation and siltation of the aquatic resources. The following points should serve to guide the placement of erosion berms: • Where the track has slope of less than 2%, berms every 50m should be installed; • Where the track slopes between 2% and 10%, berms every 25m should	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
6	flow levels. In addition, upstream dewatering boreholes may result in a loss of flow further downstream.	WM	Negligible	be installed; • Where the track slopes between 10%-15%, berms every 20m should be installed; • Where the track has slope greater than 15%, berms every 10m should be installed * All soils compacted as a result of construction activities falling	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
	Change in surface coverage.	WOM	High	outside of development footprint areas should be ripped and profiled * As much vegetation growth as possible should be promoted within the proposed development area during all phases in order to protect soils and vegetation clearance should be kept to a minimum as the biomass in the area is not very high and so hence the plants will not grow quickly * No use of clean surface water or any groundwater which potentially recharges the	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
7	Development of the mining rights area will change the surface coverage in some areas from vegetated soil to buildings, hardened gravel roads, paved areas (parking) and compacted earth.	WM	Low	watercourses in the area should take place. In this regard specific mention is made of any water use which will affect the instream flow in the Klein Marico River and the associated tributaries * Very strict control of water consumption must take place and detailed monitoring must take place and where all water usage must continuously be optimised * Permit only essential construction personnel within 100m of all riparian system * All areas of increased ecological sensitivity should be designated as No-Go areas and be off limits to all unauthorised vehicles and personnel during the construction phase of the proposed Doornhoek mining project * No crossing of the aquatic resources should take place and the substrate conditions of the aquatic resources and stream connectivity must be	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated



	Loss of instream flow				
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect
		<u> </u>	Magnitude		
				maintained * Restrict construction to the drier winter months to avoid sedimentation of the aquatic resources in the vicinity of the proposed Doornhoek mining project * No material may be dumped or stocklined within any rivers, tributaries or drainage lines in the vicinity of the proposed Doornhoek mining project.	
Оре	rational Phase				
8	Loss of MAR from dirty water areas may impact on the instream flow of the	WOM	High	* Limit the footprint area of the operational activities to what is absolutely essential in order to minimise the loss of clean water runoff areas and the concomitant recharge of streams in the area * If it is absolutely unavoidable that either the Klein Marico River or its associated tributaries will be	Can be reversed
Ο	receiving systems.	WM	Low	affected, disturbance must be minimised and suitably rehabilitated * Ensure that no incision and canalisation of the aquatic resources present takes place as a result of operational activities * All erosion noted within the study	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
0	Loss of water through clean and dirty water separation may alter instream flow on the receiving systems. In	WOM	High	area should be remedied immediately and included as part of the ongoing rehabilitation plan * During the construction and operational phases of the proposed Doornhoek mining project, erosion berms should be installed on roadways to prevent gully formation and siltation of the aquatic resources.	Can be reversed
9	addition, upstream dewatering boreholes may result in a loss of flow further downstream.	WM	Negligible	The following points should serve to guide the placement of erosion berms: • Where the track has slope of less than 2%, berms every 50m should be installed;	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
10	Impact on natural streamflow regulation and stream recharge due to	WOM	Moderate	 Where the track slopes between 2% and 10%, berms every 25m should be installed; Where the track slopes between 10%-15%, berms every 20m should be installed; 	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
10	altered hydrology in the area may lead to altered instream flow	WM	Negligible	• Where the track has slope greater than 15%, berms every 10m should be installed * Ensure that all stockpiles are well managed and have measures such as berms and hessian sheets implemented to prevent erosion and	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
11	Intercepting run-off around mining activities and infrastructure could reduce the amount of time that water	WOM	Low	sedimentation which may ultimately lead to transformation of aquatic habitat areas * As much vegetation growth as possible should be promoted within the proposed development area during the operational phase in order to protect soils and vegetation clearance should be kept to a	Can be reversed



	Loss of instream flow	-					
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect		
		•	Magnitude				
	would take to reach the Klein Marico River and its associated tributaries and may lead to "flash flood" events on varying scales.	wм	Negligible	minimum as the biomass in the area is not very high and so hence the plants will not grow quickly * No use of clean surface water or any groundwater which potentially recharges the watercourses in the area should take place. In this regard specific mention is made of any water use	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated		
		WOM High		which will affect the instream flow in the Klein Marico River and the associated tributaries * Very strict control of water consumption must take place and detailed monitoring must take place and where all water usage must continuously be optimised * Upstream dewatering boreholes should	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated		
12	Capture of run-off and capture of rainfall (inundation) in the 'dirty'/impacted areas would lower instream flow in the receiving environment.	WM	Negligible	hidst continuously be optimised "Opsitean" dewatering boreholes should be considered to minimise the creation of dirty water and this clean water should be used to recharge the natural systems downstream of the mining rights areas * Permit only essential personnel within 100m of all riparian systems * All areas of increased ecological sensitivity should be designated as No-Go areas and be off limits to all unauthorised vehicles and personnel during the operational phase of the proposed Doornhoek mining project * No crossing of the aquatic resources should take place and the substrate conditions of the aquatic resources and stream connectivity must be maintained * No material may be dumped or stocklined within any rivers, tributaries or drainage lines in the vicinity of the proposed Doornhoek mining project.	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated		
Clos	sure and Decommissioning Phase						
13	Loss of MAR from latent dirty water areas may still impact on the flow even		High	* Ensure that as far as possible all infrastructures are removed and footprint areas are suitably rehabilitated. It is considered essential that no decommissioning activities take place within the drainage and river areas. In particular mention is made of the need to not encroach on the riparian systems near the Klein Marico River and its associated tributaries with a	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources		
15	after operational phase.	WM	Negligible	minimum buffer of 100m around all riparian systems maintained in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National Water Act * Ensure that sound environmental management is in place during the decommissioning phase * Ensure that there is a clear separation of clean	h Can be avoided, managed or mitigated		



	Loss of instream flow				
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect
			Magnitude		
14	Loss of water to inadequately rehabilitated areas may still have an	WOM	Moderate	and dirty water. No dirty water should be allowed to come into contact with the receiving environment during the decommissioning phase of the proposed Doornhoek mining project * Limit the footprint area of the decommissioning activity to what is absolutely essential in order to minimise the loss of clean water runoff areas and the concomitant recharge	Can be reversed
14	impact on the flow post operational phase.	WM	Negligible	of streams in the area * If it is absolutely unavoidable that either the Klein Marico River or its associated tributaries will be affected, disturbance must be minimised and suitably rehabilitated * Ensure that no incision and canalisation of the aquatic resources present takes place as a result of decommissioning activities * All erosion noted within the study area should	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
		WOM	Moderate	be remedied immediately and included as part of the ongoing rehabilitation plan * Ensure that decommissioning of all stockpiles are well managed and have measures such as berms and hessian sheets implemented to prevent erosion and sedimentation which may ultimately lead to transformation of aquatic habitat areas * As much vegetation growth as possible should be	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
15	Impact on natural streamflow regulation and stream recharge due to altered hydrology in the area may impact on the flow post operational phase	WM	Negligible	adduct relation areas "As inder vegetation grown as possible should be promoted within the proposed development area during the decommissioning phase in order to protect soils and vegetation clearance should be kept to a minimum as the biomass in the area is not very high and so hence the plants will not grow quickly * Permit only essential personnel within 100m of all riparian systems * All areas of increased ecological sensitivity should be designated as No-Go areas and be off limits to all unauthorised vehicles and personnel during the decommissioning phase of the proposed Doornhoek mining project * No crossing of the aquatic resources should take place and the substrate conditions of the aquatic resources and stream connectivity must be maintained * No material may be dumped within any rivers, tributaries or drainage lines in the vicinity of the proposed Doornhoek mining project.	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
Post	-Closure Phase				
10	Loss of MAR from latent dirty water	WOM	High	* Ongoing monitoring of the process water system and selected boreholes should take place for a period of at least three years post closure to monitor	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
16	areas may still impact on the flow even after decommissioning phase.	WM	Negligible	and mitigate any groundwater contamination plume post-closure as a result of seepage from latent dirty water areas * Ensure that no incision and	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated



	Loss of instream flow				
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect
			Magnitude		
47	Loss of water to inadequately rehabilitated areas may still have an	WOM	Moderate	canalisation of the aquatic resources present takes place as a result of inadequately rehabilitated mining areas * All erosion noted within the study	Can be reversed
17	impact on the flow post decommissioning phase.	WM	Negligible	area should be remedied immediately and included as part of the ongoing rehabilitation plan for a period of at least three years post-closure* As much	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
	Impact on natural streamflow regulation and stream recharge due to	WOM	High	vegetation growth as possible should be promoted to protect soils and vegetation clearance should be kept to a minimum as the biomass in the	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
18	altered hydrology in the area may impact on the flow post decommissioning phase	WM	Negligible	area is not very high and so hence the plants will not grow quickly and an ongoing alien vegetation control programme should be put in place for a period of at least three years post-closure, with special mention of the	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
	Ongoing erosion and sedimentation of the aquatic resources, which will result	and sedimentation of Moderate Moderate within 100m of all riparian systems * No crossing of the aquatic resources which will assure the second		within 100m of all riparian systems * No crossing of the aquatic resources	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
19	in a loss of instream flow due to inadequate rehabilitation of affected areas.	WM	Negligible	should take place and the substrate conditions of the aquatic resources and stream connectivity must be maintained.	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated



	Impacts on water quality				
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect
			Magnitude		
Plan	ning Phase				
	Potentially poor planning leading to extensive and complex dirty water	WOM	High		May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
1	areas which need to be managed may impact on water quality.	WM	Low	* Ensure that as far as possible all infrastructures are placed outside of drainage and river areas. In particular, mention is made of the need to not	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
	Potentially poor planning leading to placement of polluting structures in	WOM	High	encroach on the aquatic resources in the vicinity of the Klein Marico River with a minimum buffer of 100m around all aquatic resources maintained in	Can be reversed
2	non-perennial drainage lines which would increase mobility of pollutants and may impact on water quality.	WM	Negligible	line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National Water Act * Design of infrastructure should be environmentally and structurally sound and all possible precautions taken to prevent spillage or seepage to the	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
	Potentially inadequate separation of clean and dirty water areas leading to	WOM	Moderate	groundwater resources present * Any dirty water facilities should be lined with an HDPE liner or drainage barrier system (as required) to prevent seepage * Dirty water dams must be adequately designed to contain a 1:50 24 hour	May cause irreplaceable loss o resources
3	contaminated water leaving the defined dirty water area may impact in water quality.	WM	Low	storm water event * It must be ensured that the design of all infrastructure prevents failure * Dirty water dams should be off stream structures and not within the natural drainage system of the area, thereby minimising impacts to	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
4	Clean and dirty water systems not being designed adequately to ensure	WOM	Moderate	water quality and loss or transformation of aquatic habitat	May cause irreplaceable loss o resources
4	protection of the water resources.	WM	Negligible		Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
Con	struction Phase				
F	Clean and dirty water systems not being constructed to the required	WOM	High	* Permit only essential construction personnel within 100m of all riparian systems * Keep all demarcated sensitive zones outside of the construction area off limits during the construction phase of the development * Limit the	May cause irreplaceable loss o resources
5	specifications to prevent contamination of clean water areas may impact on water quality.	WM	Low	footprint area of the construction activity to what is absolutely essential in order to minimise the loss of clean water runoff areas and the concomitant recharge of streams in the area * Any dirty water facilities should be lined	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
6	Major earthworks and construction activities may lead to impacts on water guality as a result of erosion and	WOM	High	with an HDPE liner or drainage barrier system (as required) to prevent seepage * Clear separation of clean and dirty water must take place and diversion of clean water around future operational areas (if applicable) must	May cause irreplaceable loss o resources



	Impacts on water quality					
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect	
			Magnitude			
	sedimentation as well as resulting in the oxidation of pyrites. In addition,, there is a risk of the release of metals to the surface and groundwater resources as a result of tillage and blasting.	WM	Negligible	 with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National Water Act * Prevent run-off from dirty water areas entering stream systems through ensuring clear separation of clean and dirty water areas; * Dirty water dams must be adequately designed to contain a 1:50 24 hour storm water event * It must be ensured that the construction of all infrastructure prevents failure * Dirty water dams should be off stream structures and not within the natural drainage system of the area, thereby minimising impacts to water quality and loss or transformation of aquatic habitat * Upstream dewatering boreholes should be considered to minimise 	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated	
7	Poor housekeeping and management may lead to impacts on water quality.	WOM	High		Can be reversed	
		WM	Low		Can be avoided, managed or mitigated	
8	Spills and other unplanned events may impact on water quality.	WOM	High	the creation of dirty water and this clean water should be used to recharge the natural systems downstream of the mining rights areas * All vehicles must be regularly inspected for leaks * Re-fuelling must take place on a sealed surface area to prevent ingress of hydrocarbons into topsoil * It must be	Can be reversed	
		WM	Low	 ensured that all hazardous storage containers and storage areas comply with the relevant SABS standards to prevent leakage * All hazardous chemicals must be stored on specified surfaces * All spills should be immediately cleaned up and treated accordingly * Appropriate sanitary facilities must be provided for the duration of the construction activities and all waste must be removed to an appropriate waste facility * No dumping of waste should take place. If any spills occur, they should be immediately cleaned up * Monitor all systems for erosion and incision * Close monitoring of water quality (surface water, groundwater and process water) must take place. Monitoring of water quality should take place at a minimum frequency of once a month (when surface water is present) during which time major salts and basic metals, are monitored along with basic parameters such as pH, Total Suspended Solids (TSS) and Total Dissolved Solids (TDS), dissolved oxygen and Electrical Conductivity (EC) * Ongoing aquatic ecological monitoring must take place on a bi-annual basis by an SA RHP Accredited assessor * Ongoing aquatic biomonitoring should take place in order to identify any emerging issues in the receiving environment * A groundwater pollution plume should be 	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated	



	Impacts on water quality						
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect		
			Magnitude				
				modelled and appropriately monitored. Any impacts to the groundwater resources in the vicinity of the proposed Doornhoek mining project will need to be suitably and timeously mitigated to prevent impacts further downstream and potentially on a regional scale			
Оре	rational Phase						
9	Mining activities and the establishment of mining waste may impact on water quality and thus needs to be managed to prevent pollution.	WOM	High	* Any dirty water facilities should be lined with an HDPE liner or drainage barrier system (as required) to prevent seepage * Clear separation of clean and dirty water must take place and diversion of clean water around operational areas (if applicable) must ensure minimisation of the loss of catchment yield * Very clear and well managed clean and dirty water separation must take place in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National Water Act * Prevent run-off from dirty water areas entering stream systems through ensuring clear separation of clean and dirty water	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources		
		WM	Negligible		Can be avoided, managed or mitigated		
40	Clean and dirty water systems not being maintained and operated to the required specifications to prevent contamination of clean water areas may impact on water quality.	WOM	High		May cause irreplaceable loss of resources		
10		WM	Negligible	areas * All dirty water facilities must be managed in such a way as to ensure that storage and surge capacity is available if a rainfall event occurs * Infrastructure must be monitored for seepages and erosion * Ensure that the mine process water system is managed in such a way as to prevent	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated		
44	Poor housekeeping and management during operational phase may lead to impacts on water quality.	WOM	Moderate	discharge to the receiving environment and to prevent discharge of dirty water * Dirty water must be recycled back into the mining system * Upstream dewatering boreholes should be considered to minimise the creation of dirty	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources		
11		WM	Negligible	water and this clean water should be used to recharge the natural systems downstream of the mining rights areas * Ensure that all stockpiles are well managed and have measures such as berms and hessian sheets	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated		
	quality as a result of erosion and sedimentation as well as resulting in the oxidation of ovrites. In addition	WOM	High	implemented to prevent erosion and sedimentation which may ultimately lead to impaired water quality and in turn, transformation of aquatic habitat areas * Implement measures to contain seepage as far as possible to prevent contamination of the groundwater regime. If necessary, treated ore stockpile areas should be lined with an HDPE liner or drainage barrier system (as required) to prevent seepage to the groundwater resources * All vehicles must be regularly inspected for leaks * Re-fuelling must take place on a	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources		
12		WM	Negligible		Can be avoided, managed or mitigated		



	Impacts on water quality						
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect		
			Magnitude				
	resources as a result of tillage and blasting.			sealed surface area to prevent ingress of hydrocarbons into topsoil * It must be ensured that all hazardous storage containers and storage areas comply with the relevant SABS standards to prevent leakage * All hazardous			
		WOM	High	chemicals must be stored on specified surfaces * All spills should be immediately cleaned up and treated accordingly * Appropriate sanitary facilities must be provided for the duration of the operational activities and all	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources		
13	Spills and other unplanned events during operational phase may impact on water quality.	WM	Negligible	waste must be removed to an appropriate waste facility * No dumping of waste should take place. If any spills occur, they should be immediately cleaned up * Monitor all systems for erosion and incision * Close monitoring of water quality (surface water, groundwater and process water) must take place. Monitoring of water quality should take place at a minimum frequency of once a month (when surface water is present) during which time major salts and basic metals, are monitored along with basic parameters such as pH, Total Suspended Solids (TSS) and Total Dissolved Solids (TDS), dissolved oxygen and Electrical Conductivity (EC) * Ongoing aquatic ecological monitoring must take place on a bi-annual basis by an SA RHP Accredited assessor * Ongoing aquatic biomonitoring should take place in order to identify any emerging issues in the receiving environment * Toxicity testing of the proposed Doornhoek mining project's process water facilities should take place quarterly and concurrently with the biomonitoring program in order to monitor the toxicological risk of the process water system to the receiving environment and in particular the groundwater resources. Tests should include the following test organisms as a minimum: Vibrio fischeri, Daphnia pulex; and Algal Growth Potential * A groundwater pollution plume should be modelled and appropriately monitored. Any impacts to the groundwater resources in the vicinity of the proposed Doornhoek mining project will need to be suitably and timeously mitigated to prevent impacts further downstream and potentially on a regional scale * The proposed Doornhoek mining project must be managed as a zero discharge facility, however definitive toxicological testing according to the Direct Estimation of Ecological Effect Potential (DEEEP) protocol should take place should it become evident that process water discharge or decant of groundwater will occur in order to define safe discharge volumes and ensure sufficient dilution.	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated		



	Impacts on water quality				
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect
			Magnitude		
Clos	sure and Decommissioning Phase				
	Inadequate closure and rehabilitation leading to ongoing pollution from	WOM	High	* Ensure that as far as possible all decommissioning of infrastructures take place outside of drainage and river areas. In particular, mention is made of	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
14	contaminating sources such as discard dumps and latent dirty water areas may impact on water quality.	WM	Negligible	the need to not encroach on the aquatic resources in the vicinity of the Klein Marico River with a minimum buffer of 100m around all aquatic resources maintained in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
	Clean and dirty water systems not being maintained or decommissioned	WOM	High	Water Act * Permit only essential personnel within 100m of all riparian systems * Very clear and well managed clean and dirty water separation must take place in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National Water Act * Prevent run-off from dirty water areas entering stream systems through ensuring clear separation of clean and dirty water areas * Dirty water dams must be adequately designed to contain a 1:50 24 hour storm water event * Any remaining infrastructure must be monitored for seepages and erosion * Ensure that any latent dirty water systems are	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
15		WM	Negligible		Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
10	Poor housekeeping and management	WOM	High		May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
16	during decommissioning phase may lead to impacts on water quality.	WM	Negligible	managed in such a way as to prevent discharge to the receiving environment and to prevent discharge of dirty water * Monitor all systems for erosion and incision * Ongoing monitoring of water quality (surface water, groundwater	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
		WOM	Moderate	and process water) must take place. Monitoring of water quality should take place at a minimum frequency of once a month (when surface water is	Can be reversed
17	Spills and other unplanned events during decommissioning phase may impact on water quality.	WM	Negligible	present) during which time major salts and basic metals, are monitored along with basic parameters such as pH, Total Suspended Solids (TSS) and Total Dissolved Solids (TDS), dissolved oxygen and Electrical Conductivity (EC) * Ongoing aquatic ecological monitoring must take place on a bi-annual basis by an SA RHP Accredited assessor in order to identify any emerging issues in the receiving environment * Toxicity testing of the proposed Doornhoek mining project's process water facilities should take place quarterly and concurrently with the biomonitoring program in order to monitor the toxicological risk of the process water system to the receiving environment and in particular the groundwater resources. Tests should include the following test organisms as a minimum: Vibrio fischeri, Daphnia pulex and Algal Growth Potential * Any impacts to the groundwater resources in the vicinity of the proposed Doornhoek mining project will need to be suitably and	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated



Impacts on water quality					
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect
			Magnitude		
				timeously mitigated to prevent impacts further downstream and potentially on a regional scale.	
Post	-Closure Phase				
	 Inadequate closure and rehabilitation leading to ongoing pollution from contaminating sources such as discard dumps and latent dirty water areas may impact on water quality. 	WOM	High	* Implement measures to contain seepage as far as possible to prevent contamination of the groundwater regime as a result of latent dirt water	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
18		WM	Negligible	facilities * Ongoing monitoring of all systems for erosion and incision * Close monitoring of water quality (surface water, groundwater and process water) must take place. Monitoring of water quality should take place at a minimum	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
	Clean and dirty water systems not being maintained or decommissioned	WOM	High	frequency of once a month (when surface water is present) during which time major salts and basic metals, are monitored along with basic parameters	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
19	properly to the required specifications to prevent contamination of clean water areas may impact on water quality.	WM	Negligible	such as pH, Total Suspended Solids (TSS) and Total Dissolved Solids (TDS), dissolved oxygen and Electrical Conductivity (EC) should take place for a period of at least 3 years post closure * Ongoing aquatic ecological monitoring must take place on a bi-annual basis by an SA RHP Accredited	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
	Inadequate rehabilitation of mining	WOM	High	assessor to identify any emerging issues in the receiving environment for a period of at least 3 years post closure * The groundwater pollution plume	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
20		WM	Negligible	should be appropriately monitored for a period of at least 3 years post closure. Any impacts to the groundwater resources in the vicinity of the proposed Doornhoek mining project will need to be suitably and timeously mitigated to prevent impacts further downstream and potentially on a regional scale	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated



	Loss of aquatic habitat				
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect
			Magnitude		
Plan	ning Phase				
	Potentially poor planning leading to the placement of infrastructure within non- perennial drainage lines, with special	WOM	Moderate		Can be reversed
1	1 mention of the waste stockpile areas as well as roads, road crossings and bridges all may alter the aquatic habitat.	WM	Negligible	Ensure that as far as possible all infrastructures are placed outside of drainage and river areas. In particular, mention is made of the need to not	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
0	Potentially inadequate design of	WOM	Moderate	encroach on the riparian systems near the Klein Marico River and its associated tributaries with a minimum buffer of 100m around all aquatic	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
2	infrastructure leading to changes to instream habitat.	WM	Negligible	resources maintained in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National Water Act * Dirty water dams should be off stream structures	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
0	Potentially inadequate design of infrastructure leading to changes to	WOM	Moderate	and not within the natural drainage system of the area, thereby minimising impacts loss or transformation of aquatic habitat * Dirty water dams should be off stream structures and not within the natural drainage system of the C	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
3	system hydrology may alter the aquatic habitat.	WM	Negligible		Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
4	Potentially inadequate separation of clean and dirty water areas and the	WOM	High		May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
4	prevention of the release of sediment rich water may alter the aquatic habitat within the receiving environment.	WM	Low		Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
Con	struction Phase				·
5	Site clearing and the removal of vegetation leading to increased runoff and erosion may alter the aquatic habitat.	WOM	High	Ensure that as far as possible all infrastructures are placed outside of drainage and river areas. In particular, mention is made of the need to not	Can be reversed
Э		WM	Negligible	encroach on the riparian systems near the Klein Marico River and its associated tributaries with a minimum buffer of 100m around all aquatic resources maintained in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
6	Site clearing and road construction and the disturbance of soils leading to	WOM	Moderate		Can be reversed



	Loss of aquatic habitat						
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect		
			Magnitude				
	increased erosion may alter the aquatic habitat.	WМ	Negligible	100m of all riparian systems * Keep all demarcated sensitive zones outside of the construction area off limits during the construction phase of the	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated		
7	Earthworks in the vicinity of drainage systems leading to increased runoff	WOM	High	development * Implement alien vegetation control program within the riparian zones with special mention of water loving tree species and invasive species such as Arundo donax and Typha capensis * Limit the footprint area	Can be reversed		
1	and erosion and altered runoff patterns may alter the aquatic habitat.	WM	Negligible	of the construction activity to what is absolutely essential in order to disturbance of soils leading to runoff, erosion and sedimentation and loss of	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated		
		WOM	High	instream flow and stream recharge * Monitor all systems for erosion and incision * Monitor all affected riparian systems for moisture stress * Monitor	Can be reversed		
	Alien vegetation encroachment will impact on and alter the aquatic habitat.	WM	Negligible	all potentially affected riparian zones for changes in riparian vegetation structure * Ongoing aquatic ecological monitoring must take place on a bi- annual basis by an SA RHP Accredited assessor * Ongoing aquatic biomonitoring should take place in order to identify any emerging issues in the receiving environment	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated		
Ope	rational Phase						
	Ongoing disturbance of soils during	WOM	High		Can be reversed		
9	general operational activities may alter the aquatic habitat.	WM	Negligible	Permit only essential operational personnel within 100m of all riparian systems * Keep all demarcated sensitive zones outside of the operational	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated		
10	Inadequate separation of clean and	WOM	High	area off limits during the operational phase of the development * Implement alien vegetation control program within the riparian zones with special	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources		
10	dirty water areas may alter the aquatic habitat during the operational phase.	WM	Low	mention of water loving tree species and invasive species such as Arundo donax and Typha capensis * Ensure that all stockpiles are well managed	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated		
11	Mining related activities leading to increased disturbance of soils and	WOM	Moderate	and have measures such as berms and hessian sheets implemented to prevent erosion and sedimentation which may ultimately lead to	Can be reversed		
11	drainage lines may alter the aquatic habitat.	WM	Negligible	transformation of aquatic habitat areas * Monitor all systems for erosion and incision * Monitor all affected riparian systems for moisture stress * Monitor	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated		
	Any activities which lead to the reduction of flow in the system with special mention of the use of surface	WOM	High	all potentially affected riparian zones for changes in riparian vegetation structure * Ongoing aquatic ecological monitoring must take place on a bi-	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources		
12	special mention of the use of surface and groundwater sources for production water may alter the aquatic habitat.	WM	Moderate	annual basis by an SA RHP Accredited assessor to identify any emerging issues in the receiving environment.	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated		



	Loss of aquatic habitat			-	
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect
			Magnitude		
	Alien vegetation encroachment will	WOM	High		Can be reversed
13	impact on and alter the aquatic habitat.	WM	Low		Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
Clos	ure and Decommissioning Phase				
14	Disturbance of soils as part of demolition activities may alter the	WOM	Low	Ensure that as far as possible all decommissioning activities take place outside of drainage and river areas. In particular, mention is made of the	Can be reversed
14	aquatic habitat.	WM	Negligible	need to not encroach on the riparian systems near the Klein Marico River and its associated tributaries with a minimum buffer of 100m around all	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
45	Inadequate separation of clean and dirty water areas may alter the aquatic	WOM	High	aquatic resources maintained in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National Water Act * Permit only essential personnel within 100m of all riparian systems * Keep all demarcated sensitive zones outside of the decommissioning area off limits during the decommissioning phase of the project * Ongoing adherence to the alien vegetation control program within the riparian zones with special mention of water loving tree species and invasive species such as Arundo donax and Typha capensis * Monitor all systems for erosion and incision * Monitor all affected riparian systems for	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
15	habitat during the decommissioning phase.	WM	Low		Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
40	Ongoing pollution from inappropriately	WOM	Moderate		May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
16	decommissioned structures may alter the aquatic habitat.	WM	Negligible		Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
17	Alien vegetation encroachment will	WOM	High	moisture stress * Monitor all potentially affected riparian zones for changes in riparian vegetation structure * Ongoing aquatic ecological monitoring must	Can be reversed
17	impact on and alter the aquatic habitat.	WM	Low	take place on a bi-annual basis by an SA RHP Accredited assessor in order to identify any emerging issues in the receiving environment	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
Post	-Closure Phase				
18	Inadequate separation of clean and dirty water areas may alter the aquatic	WOM	High	Ongoing monitoring of the process water system and selected boreholes should take place for a period of at least three years post closure to monitor and mitigate any groundwater contamination plume post-closure as a result	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
10	habitat during the decommissioning phase.	WM	Low	of seepage from latent dirty water areas * Ensure that no incision and canalisation of the aquatic resources present takes place as a result of	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
19		WOM	High	inadequately rehabilitated mining areas * All erosion noted within the study area should be remedied immediately and included as part of the ongoing rehabilitation plan for a period of at least three years post-closure* As much	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources



	Loss of aquatic habitat					
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect	
			Magnitude			
	Ongoing pollution from inappropriately decommissioned structures may alter the aquatic habitat.	WM	Low	vegetation growth as possible should be promoted to protect soils and vegetation clearance should be kept to a minimum as the biomass in the area is not very high and so hence the plants will not grow quickly * Ongoing	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated	
		WOM	High	adherence to the alien vegetation control program within the riparian zones with special mention of water loving tree species and invasive species such as Arundo donax and Typha capensis * Monitor all affected riparian	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources	
20	Alien vegetation encroachment will impact on and alter the aquatic habitat.	WM	Negligible	systems for moisture stress * Monitor all potentially affected riparian zones for changes in riparian vegetation structure * Ongoing aquatic ecological monitoring must take place on a bi-annual basis by an SA RHP Accredited assessor in order to identify any emerging issues in the receiving environment	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated	

	Loss of aquatic biodiversity and sensitive taxa						
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect		
			Magnitude				
Plan	ning Phase						
1	Potentially poor planning leading to the placement of infrastructure within non- perennial drainage lines with special	WOM	Moderate	Ensure that as far as possible all infrastructures are placed outside of drainage and river areas. In particular, mention is made of the need to not encroach on the riparian systems near the Klein Marico	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources		
I	mention of the overburden stockpile areas, road crossings and bridges may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WM	Negligible	River and its associated drainage lines with a minimum buffer of 100m around all riparian systems maintained in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National Water Act. Layout	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources		



	Loss of aquatic biodiversity and sensitive taxa				
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect
			Magnitude		
2	Potentially inadequate design of infrastructure leading to changes to	WOM	Moderate	option 2 is strongly discouraged from an aquatic health point of view * Dirty water dams must be adequately designed to contain a 1:50 24 hour storm water event * Dirty water dams and tailings facilities should be off stream and tributary structures and not within the	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
2	instream habitat may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WM	Negligible	natural drainage system of the area, thereby minimising impacts loss of instream flow and downstream recharge * Implement an ongoing alien vegetation control program to be initiated in the pre-	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
3	3 Potentially inadequate design of infrastructure leading to changes to system hydrology may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WOM	Moderate	construction phase of the project * The project design should limit the footprint area of the proposed mining activities to what is absolutely essential in order to minimise the loss of clean water runoff areas and the concomitant recharge of streams in the area	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
0		WM	Negligible	and the disturbance of soils leading to runoff, erosion and sedimentation * Dirty water dams should be off stream structures and not within the natural drainage system of the area, thereby	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
	Potentially inadequate design of	WOM	High	minimising impacts loss or transformation of aquatic habitat * Dirty water dams should be off stream structures and not within the natural drainage system of the area, thereby minimising impacts from inundation and siltation * Ensure that measures to contain	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
4	infrastructure leading to contamination of water and sediments in the streams may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WM	Low	seepage as far as possible to prevent contamination of the groundwater regime are implemented into the design of mining infrastructure * Upstream dewatering boreholes should be considered to minimise the creation of dirty water and this clean water should be used to recharge the natural systems downstream of the mining rights areas so as to aid in the prevention of the contamination of the groundwater resources without compromising on surface water recharge further downstream;	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
Cons	struction Phase				
5	Site clearing and the removal of vegetation may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity. Site clearing and	WOM	High	No use of clean surface water or any groundwater which potentially recharges the watercourses in the area should take place. In this regard specific mention is made of any water use which will affect	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources



	Loss of aquatic biodiversity and sensitive taxa				
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect
			Magnitude		
	road construction may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WM	Negligible	the instream flow in the Klein Marico River and the associated tributaries and in turn affect more sensitive taxa which require faster flowing habitat * Very strict control of water consumption must take place and detailed monitoring must take place and where all water	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
6	Earthworks and other mining construction activities in the vicinity of	WOM	High	High usage must continuously be optimised * Permit only essential construction personnel within 100m of all riparian systems * Keep all demarcated sensitive zones outside of the construction area off limits during the construction phase of the development * Ongoing implementation of the alien vegetation control program * Very clear	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
0	⁶ wetland and riparian areas may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WM	Negligible		Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
7	Placement of infrastructure within non- perennial drainage lines with special mention of the overburden stockpile	WOM	High	as to ensure that storage and surge capacity is available if a rainfall event occurs * Limit the footprint area of the construction activity to what is absolutely essential in order to minimise the loss of clean water runoff areas and the concomitant recharge of streams in the	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
1	areas, road crossings and bridges may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WM	Negligible	area and the disturbance of soils leading to runoff, erosion and sedimentation * Ensure that all spills are immediately cleaned up * All hazardous chemicals must be stored on specified surfaces * Keep all demarcated sensitive zones outside of the construction	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
		WOM	High	area off limits during the construction phase of the development as well as during the operational phase of the mine * Any areas where active erosion is observed must be rehabilitated and berms utilised to slow movement of water * Prevent run-off from dirty water areas	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
8	Inadequate separation of clean and dirty water areas may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WM	Low	entering stream systems through ensuring clear separation of clean and dirty water areas * Monitor all systems for erosion and incision * Monitor all affected riparian systems for moisture stress * Monitor all potentially affected riparian zones for changes in riparian vegetation structure * Ongoing aquatic ecological monitoring must take place on a bi-annual basis by an SA RHP Accredited assessor * Ongoing aquatic biomonitoring should take place in order to identify any emerging issues in the receiving environment	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated



	Loss of aquatic biodiversity and sensitive taxa				
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect
			Magnitude		
Ope	rational Phase	-	-		
9	Ongoing disturbance of soils with general operational activities may lead	WOM	High	No use of clean surface water or any groundwater which potentially recharges the watercourses in the area should take place. In this regard specific mention is made of any water use which will affect	Can be reversed
9	to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WM	Negligible	the instream flow in the Klein Marico River and the associated tributaries and in turn affect more sensitive taxa which require faster flowing habitat * Very strict control of water consumption must take	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
10	10 Inadequate separation of clean and dirty water areas may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WOM	High	place and detailed monitoring must take place and where all water usage must continuously be optimised * Permit only essential operating personnel within 100m of all riparian systems * Keep all	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
10		WM	Low	demarcated sensitive zones outside of the operational area off limits during the operational phase of the development Ongoing	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
11	Loss of instream flow due to abstraction for water for production	WOM	Moderate	implementation of the alien vegetation control program * Very clear and well managed clean and dirty water separation must take place in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National	Can be reversed
11	may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WM	Negligible	Water Act * All dirty water facilities must be managed in such a way as to ensure that storage and surge capacity is available if a rainfall event occurs * Limit the footprint area of the operational activity to what is absolutely essential in order to minimise the loss of clean	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
10	Seepage from the discard dumps and	WOM	High	water runoff areas and the concomitant recharge of streams in the area and the disturbance of soils leading to runoff, erosion and	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
12	12 overburden stockpiles may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WM	Moderate	sedimentation * Ensure that all spills are immediately cleaned up * All hazardous chemicals must be stored on specified surfaces * Ensure that all stockpiles are well managed and have measures	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
	Potential discharge from the mine process water system with special	WOM	High	such as berms and hessian sheets implemented to prevent erosion and sedimentation which may ultimately lead to transformation of aquatic habitat areas * Any areas where active erosion is observed	Can be reversed
13	mention of RWD and any PCD's may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WM	Low	must be rehabilitated and berms utilised to slow movement of water * Prevent run-off from dirty water areas entering stream systems through ensuring clear separation of clean and dirty water areas *	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated



	Loss of aquatic biodiversity and sensitive taxa				
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect
			Magnitude		
14	Sewage discharge from mine offices and camps may lead to a loss in	WOM	Low	Ensure that the mine process water system is managed in such a way as to prevent discharge to the receiving environment and to prevent discharge of dirty water * Implement measures to contain	Can be reversed
14	aquatic biodiversity.	WM	Negligible	seepage as far as possible to prevent contamination of the groundwater regime * Monitor all systems for erosion and incision * Monitor all affected riparian systems for moisture stress * Monitor all	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
	15Increased concentrations of fluorides or fluoride salts reaching the surface water resources may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversityWM	WOM High structure * Ongoing aquatic ecological monitor	potentially affected riparian zones for changes in riparian vegetation structure * Ongoing aquatic ecological monitoring must take place on a bi-annual basis by an SA RHP Accredited assessor * Ongoing	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources	
15		WM	Moderate	aquatic biomonitoring should take place in order to identify any emerging issues in the receiving environment;	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
Clos	ure and Decommissioning Phase				
16	Disturbance of soils as part of demolition activities may lead to a loss	WOM	Low	Ensure that as far as possible all decommissioning activities take place outside of drainage and river areas. In particular mention is made of the need to not encroach on the riparian systems near the	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
10	in aquatic biodiversity. WM Negligible buffer of 100m around all riparia the requirements of regulation G	Klein Marico River and its associated drainage lines with a minimum buffer of 100m around all riparian systems maintained in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National Water Act * No use of clean surface water or any groundwater which potentially	Can be reversed		
47	17 Inadequate separation of clean and dirty water areas may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WOM	High	recharges the watercourses in the area should take place. In this regard specific mention is made of any water use which will affect the instream flow in the Klein Marico River and the associated tributaries and in turn affect more sensitive taxa which require faster	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
17		WM	Low	tributaries and in turn affect more sensitive taxa which require faster flowing habitat * Very strict control of water consumption must take place and detailed monitoring must take place and where all water usage must continuously be optimised * Permit only essential	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated



	Loss of aquatic biodiversity and sensitive taxa					
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect	
			Magnitude			
18	Seepage from any latent discard	WOM	High	personnel within 100m of all riparian systems * Keep all demarcated sensitive zones outside of the decommissioning area off limits during the decommissioning phase of the development * Ongoing adherence to the alien vegetation control program * Very clear and	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources	
10	dumps and dirty water areas may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WM	Moderate	well managed clean and dirty water separation must take place in line with the requirements of regulation GN704 of the National Water Act * Limit the footprint area of the decommissioning	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources	
10	Inadequate closure leading to post	WOM	High	activities to what is absolutely essential in order to minimise the loss of clean water runoff areas and the concomitant recharge of streams in the area and the disturbance of soils leading to runoff, erosion and sedimentation * Ensure that all spills are immediately	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources	
19	closure impacts on water quality may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	wм	Negligible	cleaned up * All hazardous chemicals must be stored on specified surfaces * Any areas where active erosion is observed must be rehabilitated and berms utilised to slow movement of water * Implement measures to contain seepage from latent dirty water	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated	
		WOM	Moderate	areas as far as possible to prevent contamination of the groundwater regime * Monitor all systems for erosion and incision * Monitor all affected riparian systems for moisture stress * Monitor all	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources	
20	Ongoing erosion of disturbed areas that have not been adequately rehabilitated may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WM	Negligible	potentially affected riparian zones for changes in riparian vegetation structure * Ongoing aquatic ecological monitoring must take place on a bi-annual basis by an SA RHP Accredited assessor * Ongoing aquatic biomonitoring should take place in order to identify any emerging issues in the receiving environment * Monitor all dirty water control facilities using toxicological screening methods and implement the calculation of discharge dilution factors by means of the Direct Estimation of Ecological Effect Potential (DEEEP) protocol; Ø Toxicological monitoring of the receiving and process water systems on a quarterly basis.	Can be avoided, managed or mitigated	
Post	-Closure Phase					



	Loss of aquatic biodiversity and sensitive taxa				
Nr	Activity	Without or With Mitigation	Significance	Mitigation Measures	Mitigation Effect
		•	Magnitude		
21	Ongoing erosion of disturbed areas that have not been adequately	WOM	Moderate	boreholes should take place for a period of at least three years post closure to monitor and mitigate any groundwater contamination plume post-closure as a result of seepage from latent dirty water areas * Ensure that no incision and canalisation of the aquatic resources present takes place as a result of inadequately rehabilitated mining areas * All erosion noted within the study area should be remedied immediately and included as part of the ongoing rehabilitation plan for a period of at least three years post- closure* As much vegetation growth as possible should be promoted to protect soils and vegetation clearance should be kept to a minimum as the biomass in the area is not very high and so hence the plants will not grow quickly * Ongoing adherence to the alien vegetation control program within the riparian zones with special mention of water loving tree species and invasive species such as Arundo donax and Typha capensis * Monitor all affected riparian zones for changes in riparian vegetation structure * Ongoing aquatic ecological monitoring must take place on a bi-	May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
	rehabilitated may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WM	Negligible		Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
22	Inadequate separation of clean and dirty water areas may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WOM	High		May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
		WM	Low		Can be avoided, managed or mitigated
23	Seepage from any latent discard dumps and dirty water areas may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WOM	High		May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
		WM	Moderate		May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
24	Potential post closure impacts on water quality may lead to a loss in aquatic biodiversity.	WOM	High		May cause irreplaceable loss of resources
		WM	Moderate		May cause irreplaceable loss of resources

